

**O. Mo‘minov, X. Abdurahmonova, S. Tohirjonova, Sh. Bo‘tayev**

# **ENGLISH**

## **2**

**Akademik litsey va kasb-hunar kollejarining 2-bosqich  
o‘quvchilari uchun o‘quv qo‘llanma**

G‘afur G‘ulom nomidagi nashriyot-matbaa ijodiy uyi  
Toshkent – 2007

81.2 Angl  
Ya 61

*Oliy va o'rtta maxsus kasb-hunar ta'limi ilmiy-metodik birlashmalari  
faoliyatini muvofiqlashtiruvchi Kengash tomonidan nashrga tavsiya  
etilgan*

Taqrizchi: A. Qo'chqorov – dotsent

**English 2:** Akademik litsey va kasb-hunar kollejlari uchun ingliz tilidan o'quv qo'llanma/ O. Mo'minov, X. Abdurahmonova, S. Tohirjonova, Sh. Bo'tayev; O'zbekiston Respublikasi oliy va o'rtta maxsus ta'lim vazirligi; O'rtta maxsus kasb-hunar ta'limi markazi. – T.: G'afur G'ulom nomidagi nashriyot-matbaa ijodiy uyi, 2007. – 288 b.

I. Mo'minov va boshq.

**BBK 81.2Angl-923**

M-A  $\frac{2020102-32}{M352(04)-2007}$  qat'iy buyurtma, 2007

ISBN 978-9943-03-033-6

© O. Mo'minov, X. Abdurahmonova,  
S. Tohirjonova, Sh. Bo'tayev  
© G'afur G'ulom nomidagi nashriyot-  
matbaa ijodiy uyi, 2007.

---

---

## C O N T E N T S

Preface .....	5
<b>Unit 1 International Relations</b> .....	<b>6</b>
Lesson 1. International Relations .....	6
Lesson 2. Fruitful co – operation .....	15
Lesson 3. Ringing nations together .....	26
Lesson 4. Ancient diplomatic links .....	37
Lesson 5. International economic ties .....	48
<b>Unit 2 Travelling</b> .....	<b>60</b>
Lesson 1. Travelling .....	60
Lesson 2. Travelling by train .....	67
Lesson 3. Travelling by air .....	76
Lesson 4. Travelling by sea .....	82
Lesson 5. Million return to Europe .....	90
<b>Unit 3 Hotel</b> .....	<b>96</b>
Lesson 1. Hotel 1 .....	96
Lesson 2. Hotel 2 .....	103
Lesson 3. Kinds of hotels .....	109
Lesson 4. Hotels in Great Britain .....	116
Lesson 5. Hotels in Uzbekistan .....	124
<b>Unit 4 Meals</b> .....	<b>131</b>
Lesson 1. English Meals .....	131
Lesson 2. Typical Traditions of English dishes .....	136
Lesson 3. Uzbek meals .....	143
Lesson 4. American meals .....	152
Lesson 5. Searching for the real American Cuisine .....	156
<b>Unit 5 Famous people of the world</b> .....	<b>167</b>
Lesson 1. Famous people of Great Britain (I. Newton) .....	167
Lesson 2. Queen Elizabeth .....	172
Lesson 3. Famous people of Uzbekistan .....	178

Lesson 4. Amir Temur .....	184
Lesson 5. Famous people of the United States of America .....	192
<b>Unit 6 Museums. Monuments. Exhibitions .....</b>	<b>203</b>
Lesson 1. British Museums .....	203
Lesson 2. Art Galleries and Museums .....	208
Lesson 3. Uz Expo-Center .....	212
Lesson 4. National Monument of the USA .....	221
Lesson 5. Statue of Liberty. History .....	229
<b>Unit 7 Healthy way of life .....</b>	<b>233</b>
Lesson 1. What is Health? .....	233
Lesson 2. At the doctors .....	241
Lesson 3. Is it difficult to catch HIV aids .....	246
Lesson 4. National health care in Great Britain .....	253
Lesson 5. Better health care in America .....	261
Dictionary .....	274

---

---

## PREFACE

The textbook is prepared on the grounds of academic lyceum syllabus confirmed by Ministry of Higher and secondary special education of the Republic of Uzbekistan.

This textbook is intended for the 2<sup>nd</sup> year students of academic lyceum in order to extend their knowledge in English.

This is the first edition of this textbook which satisfies the requirements of the National Programme of training personnel and state standards of academic lyceum syllabus on certain subject as well.

The main aim of the textbook is to improve oral and writing speech habits of the students of academic lyceum, teaching them self-acting use of the models of linguistic constructions are found in the living language of English, developing skills of direct translation from mother tongue into English or vice-versa.

The textbook covers different selected texts corresponding to the topics on socio- economic, social and cultural spheres of life. During the selection of the texts there given particular attention by authors to spiritual and educational problems and there are some texts telling about foreign relations of the Republic of Uzbekistan, texts about our outstanding scientists, statesmen, art and literature, tourism in our republic.

The textbook includes texts on daily cares, history, geography, economics and they are recommended to be taught by using of technical means. It will be very effective for the lyceum students in learning above-mentioned educational materials in the close connection with other subjects. It will be also useful for them in order to perfect their mental outlook, speech habits and skills, and extending their knowledge in English.

During the selection of these texts the authors paid much attention to richness of the texts, their usefulness, easiness and difficulty, their conformation to requirements of academic lyceum syllabus.

Each lesson consists of phonetic drills, grammar explanation, new words and expressions, dialogues and texts on socio-economic life in our country and abroad, there also given the system of grammar exercises which can be used for improving students' speech habits and skills.

The authors

---

---

## UNIT 1

### Lesson 1

### INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

**Exercise 1.** Look at the picture and try to guess content of it.

**Exercise 2.** Speak about Uzbek and Indian relations.



#### Phonetic Exercises

**Exercise 1.** Identify words heard in a sentence on the basis of sound.  
**Directions:** For each item, you will see two words and you will hear a sentence which contains one of the words.

In the blank, Write the letter, (A) or (B), of the word you have heard in the sentence.

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| 1. (A) teens | (B) deans |
| 2. (A) dent  | (B) tent  |
| 3. (A) coat  | (B) code  |

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| 4. (A) let   | (B) led   |
| 5. (A) drunk | (B) trunk |
| 6. (A) drain | (B) train |
| 7. (A) write | (B) ride  |
| 8. (A) cards | (B) carts |

**Exercise 2. Compare the pronunciation of these words.**

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. (A) cold    | (B) gold    |
| 2. (A) goat    | (B) coat    |
| 3. (A) girl    | (B) curl    |
| 4. (A) class   | (B) glass   |
| 5. (A) bag     | (B) back    |
| 6. (A) busing  | (B) buzzing |
| 7. (A) piece   | (B) peas    |
| 8. (A) yolk    | (B) joke    |
| 9. (A) years   | (B) jeers   |
| 10. (A) clocks | (B) clogs   |
| 11. (A) frock  | (B) frog    |
| 12. (A) glue   | (B) clue    |
| 13. (A) dogs   | (B) docks   |
| 14. (A) cane   | (B) gain    |
| 15. (A) lose   | (B) loose   |
| 16. (A) sip    | (B) zip     |
| 17. (A) jello  | (B) yellow  |

**Grammar exercises**

**Exercise 1. Fill in the gaps with the correct preposition of time.**

1. My father was born... 1920 and died ..... 1 November 1986.
2. I'll see you at the party... Christmas Eve..... accordance ..... the time.
3. What do you usually do... weekends'?
4. There is nothing to do herein winter. Everything ..... its .... force
5. My husband always goes to bed late night.
6. He'll take his annual holiday... the winter but he'll have a week of...
7. She is always... a hurry.... solving global problems..... mankind.
8. O.k. then! I'll meet you... lunch time.
9. I usually cook... the evening.
10. O.k. madam. I'll fix it... no time.
11. ....five years, I'll be forty.
12. He has worked..... international association..... 1995.
13. ....the day my daughter was born, my husband was away on business.
14. It's always foggy here the mornings.

15. ....the day I left. I've felt homesick.
16. I expect her to come.....any moment.
17. She has been sick.....the last three days.
18. They plan to leave.....daybreak.
19. Our friends visit us.....time to time.
20. Migratory birds leave my country .....autumn.
21. ....Elizabethan times work was harder than it is today.
22. ....the same month she lost both her parents.
23. Trains in Greece usually leave.....time.
24. He promised to visit us more often.....future.
25. The doctor will see you.....a few minutes.
26. We'll go to the concert.....Sunday evening.

**Exercise 2. Fill the correct verb from in the gaps.**

1. Uzbekistan..... a sovereign state, (*is, are*)
2. The news ..... good today, (*is, are*)
3. Uzbekistan's main goal ...last in peace, non-use of force (*is, are*)
4. The cattle ..... browsing in the field, (*is, are*)
5. The money ..... in my pocket, (*is, are*)
6. My tights ..... dirty, (*is, are*)
7. The pliers ..... rusty, (*is, are*)
8. Knowledge ..... power, (*is, are*)
9. Friends are plenty when the purse ..... full. (*is, are*)
10. The machinery ..... being repaired at the moment, (*is, are*)
11. Where ..... mother's glasses? (*is, are*)
12. There ..... any police in front of the Embassy, (*isn't, aren't*)
13. Linguistics ..... my favourite subject, (*is, are*)
14. Here ..... the 9 o'clock news. (*is, are*)
15. My wages ..... very high, (*isn't, aren't*)

**Time yourself and begin to read.**

### JUAN IN BRITAIN

Juan wanted to go to Britain to speak English with real English people. His sister's husband was an English doctor and when Juan wrote to her, his sister, whose name was Rosa, invited him to stay with her.

She met him at the airport in her English ear and naturally spoke Spanish all the time.

"Never mind'," he thought, "the husband speaks English..." But this Englishman spoke Spanish and he liked Spanish food and a Spanish atmosphere when he came home in the evening.



Juan's sister had only Spanish friends and Juan did not speak a word of English.

One morning about nine o'clock he attacked the milkman who was putting two bottles of milk on the doorstep. He suddenly opened the door and said "Good morning." The milkman said "Good morning" and walked away.

Finally, his big day came. One of Rosa's friends had a party and invited Juan. At last he was going to meet real English people of his own age. He wanted to go up to people but could not.

Suddenly a very beautiful girl came up to him and said, "How lucky you are Spanish. I am having a Spanish exam soon. I can practise on you." And she invited him to dance in Spanish.

From that moment he gave up. And two months later he went home quite happy.

SPEED: Check your reading speed.

Time you finished reading...

Time you began reading...

### Exercise 3. Learn the speech pattern.

*Pavel is washing.*

*Teacher:* What is Pavel doing?

*Andrei:* He is washing.

*Teacher:* What time of the day is it?

*Masha:* It is morning because people always wash in the morning.

*Oleg:* It is morning because Pavel is washing his neck, and we wash our necks in the morning. *Ann is eating.*

*Teacher:* What is she doing?

*Jane:* She is eating.

*Teacher:* What time of the day is it?

*Lena:* It is afternoon. She is eating soup and people eat soup in the afternoon.

Themes: The pupil is watering flowers, drinking hot tea, dressing, skiing, playing snowballs, digging, a flowerbed, catching fish, sawing wood, feeding birds, etc.

## Vocabulary

International association – xalqaro asotsiatsiya (международная ассоциация)

sovereign state – суверен (mustaqil) davlat (суверенное государство)

international law – xalqaro huquq (международное право)

main goal – asosiy maqsad (основная цель)

lasting peace – doimiy tinchlik (прочный мир)

disarmament – quolsizlanish (разоружение)  
 demilitarization – harbiysizlanish (демилитаризация)  
 elimination – yo‘q qilish, barbod qilish (уничтожение)  
 nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction – yadroviy va boshqa om-  
 maviy qirg‘in quollari (ядерные и другие оружия массового уничтожения)  
 non-use of force – kuch ishlatmaslik (неупотребление сил)  
 pressure – bosim, ta’sir (влияние, нажим)  
 settling dispute – muammoni (kelishmovchiliklarni) hal qilish (решение  
 спорных проблем)  
 contradiction – qarama-qarshilik (противоречие)  
 cooperation – hamkorlik (сотрудничество)  
 solidarity – birdamlik (солидарность)  
 solving global problem of mankind – insoniyatning global (eng umumiy,  
 muhim) muammolarini hal etish (решение глобальных проблем человечества)  
 foreign investors – chet el sarmoyadorlari (зарубежные инвесторы)  
 stipulate – ifodalamoq (обосновать)  
 regulation – nizom, qoida, tartibga solish (устав, урегулирование)  
 Cabinet of Ministers – Vazirlar Mahkamasi (кабинет министров)  
 subject (to) – itoat ettirmoq (взять в подчинение)  
 requisition – talab (требование)  
 to be in force – o‘z kuchida qolmoq (быть в силах)  
 make conditions worse – ahvolni yomonlashtirmoq (ухудшать положение)  
 compete – raqobatlashmoq (соревноваться)  
 field of construction – qurilish sohasi (область строения)  
 Ministry of Higher Education – Oliy ta’lim vazirligi (Министерство  
 высшего образования)  
 distribute – taqsimlamoq (распределять)  
 direct exchange – to‘g‘ridan-to‘g‘ri almashtirish (прямой обмен)  
 upgrade – malaka oshirmoq (повышать квалификацию)  
 postgraduate courses – aspirantura (аспирантура)  
 research institutes – ilmiy-tekshirish institutlari (научно-исследовательские  
 институты)  
 in accordance with – asosan, bo‘yicha (в зависимости от, согласно)  
 High attestation commission – Oliy attestatsiya komissiyasi (Высшая  
 аттестационная комиссия)

## TEXT

### INTERNATIONAL RELATIONS

Being full member of the International Association, the Republic of Uzbeki-  
 stan takes part present in the International relations as sovereign state, the  
 object of International law, the main goal of which is lasting peace, disarma-  
 ment. demilitarization of the territory, elimination of the nuclear and other

weapons of mass destruction, non-use of force and pressure, and first of all military forces, when settling disputes and contradictions between sovereign states, as well as cooperation with states and solidarity with peoples in solving global problems of mankind.

For foreign investors the legal condition in the Republic are good enough and are stipulated by the Laws “On foreign Economic Activity”, “On Foreign investors” by a number of regulations of the Cabinet of Ministry of the Republic. The Laws are very close to International regulations. Foreign investments are not subjected to nationalization, requisition, for foreign investments the laws adopted at the moment investment are in force for 10 years if new law makes investment conditions worse (apart from taxes, ecology, requirement, national security).

Uzbek builders have certain international authorities successfully competing with western firms in some fields of construction which are well known in Egypt, Iran, Pakistan.

On the basis of intergovernmental agreement foreign specialists can work in the Republic. Teaching of foreign students in colleges is also carried out on the bases of intergovernmental agreement and in accordance with set quota and number. On the basis of quota the Ministry of Higher Education distributes the places by specialities. In addition, there is direct exchange of students between colleges.

Foreign specialists can upgrade their knowledge in postgraduate courses in colleges or research institutes in accordance with regulation of High Attestation Commission of the Republic of Uzbekistan.

**Exercise 1. Answer the following questions.**

1. Where does the Republic of Uzbekistan take part in?
2. What is the main goal of Uzbekistan in International relations?
3. What are the legal of conditions for foreign investors in the Republic of Uzbekistan.
4. What do the Uzbek builders have successfully competing with Western firms?
5. What can foreign specialists do on the basis of International agreement in the Republic of Uzbekistan?
6. What does the Ministry of Higher Education distribute?

**Exercise 2. Choose among the following prepositions to fill in the blanks**

....foreign investors the legal condition .... the Republic are good enough and are stipulated ....the Laws “.... foreign Economic Activity”, “....Foreign investors” .... a number ... regulations ... the Cabinet ... Ministry ... republic. The Laws are very close ... International regulations. Foreign investments are not subjected ...nationalization, requisition, ... foreign investments the laws

adopted ... the moment investment are ... force ... 10 years if new law makes investment conditions worse (apart .... taxes, ecology, requirement, national security).

Uzbek builders have certain International authorities successfully competing ... western firms ... some fields ... construction which are well known ... Egypt, Iran, Pakistan.

**Exercise 3. Fill in the gaps using the correct *Past Tense*. Match the numbers to the right verb:**

*manage drive (2) see breakdown say (2) to continue explain attach.*

My father and I ..... (1) home along a country road when we ..... (2) a man waving to us to stop. The man ..... (3) that his car ..... (4) and is trying to steer it to the side of the road, he ..... (5) it in a ditch.

After some efforts, we ..... (6) to get his car back on the road, but the engine would still not start, so, getting a length of rope from the back of our van, my father ..... (7) the car to our van and we ..... (8) it carefully to a

garage in the nearest town.

The garage mechanic ..... (9) it would take a little while to repair it. After that, we ..... (10) goodbye to the driver and ..... (11) on our way.

**Exercise 4. Write the correct *Past Tense* to complete the meaning of the following sentences.**

1. When I was younger my goal ..... to be a teacher (*to be*)
2. Uzbekistan..... global problems of mankind and try ..... (*solve, settle*)
3. Where you ..... when the crash.....? (*walk, happen*)
4. I ..... English as a foreign language in a private school in Thessaloniki for 2 years, 1978 to 1980. (*teach*)
5. We ..... different flats for several years before we ..... a flat of our own. (*rent, buy*)
6. How long ago your grandparents.....? (*die*)
7. Eight years ago she .....three months in Japan. By the end of her stay, she.....fluent Japanese, (*spend, speak*)
8. After the prisoners ..... in concentration camps they..... (*hold, murder*)
9. Mary.....to call you all afternoon. Where were you? (*try*)
10. I.....to my walkman when the lights (*listen, go off*)
11. John.....for twenty minutes before Suzanne (*wait, arrive*)

**Exercise 5. Adjective or adverb? Underline the correct one.**

1. These roses smell nice/nicely.
2. Don't be late/lately.

3. People must always drive careful/carefully.
4. He flat/flatly refused to go out with her.
5. He entered the room slow/slowly.
6. You'd better drive careful/carefully.
7. I can hard/hardly remember his telephone number.
8. She usually studies hard/hardly for the exams.
9. She always wears smart/smartly clothes.
10. It's so cold/coldly in here.
11. We can clear/clearly see the difference.
12. He reached the airport a quarter of an hour late/late.

**Exercise 6. Say if the underlined words are correct(v) or not (x).**

1. She speaks Japanese *fluent*.
2. He wrote *bad* in the test.
3. The meeting was *poorly* attended.
4. Mother shouted at him *angry*.
5. She sings very *good*.
6. The rooms are very *comfortably*.
7. These roses are *beautiful*.
8. John is a *lively* person.
9. Paul sings *wonderful*.
10. He plays disco music *loud*.

**Exercise 7. Put *can, be able to, could* to fill in these sentences. Sometimes you might need a negative.**

1. Did you make him understand?  
– It was very difficult but in the end I ..... make him understand.
2. .... you play bridge?  
– Yes, I..... but I haven't got any cards.
3. Ask professor Stone about it. He should ..... help you.
4. Mrs. Martin used to travel alone but she ..... do it now.
5. She asked if she ..... come to our party.
6. We ..... send the items on time although the company's order arrived late.

**Exercise 8. Choose the correct verb.**

1. You.....the air conditioning? (*repair*)
2. Katya..... the dining room, (*not clean*)
3. The tourists ..... the fortress bin the  
the old monument (*see, not see*).
4. Sieve ..... to Brusells, he..... to Zürich. (*not fly, fly*)
5. He... behind the bookcase hut a book.....off the shelf and ..... a  
loud noise. (*hide, fall, make*)

### Exercise 9. Past Simple or Past Continuous?

1. The students .....when the teacher.....in. (*not study, come*)
2. He.....on the door and I .....to open it. (*knock, rush*)
3. While he..... in the sea. a jelly fish..... him. (*swim, sting*)
4. Shakespeare .....about 36 plays. (*write*)
5. They ..... along the motorway when suddenly a tyre (*drive, burst*)
6. The roof.....an night. (*leak*)
7. Men an earthquake nearly ..... us on the floor. (*sleep, throw*)
8. What you ..... at 10 o'clock last night? (*do*)

### Exercise 10. Change into the Past Tense.

Two brothers live across a path,1

But never see each other.

A little ball can reach the sky.

The doors are open in the morning but shut at night.

If you look into them, you see yourself inside.

What has an eye, but cannot see?

These two brothers live not very far apart; one on the left, one on the right; But they never see each other.

A thick forest which grows as fast as it is cut down.

Why are teeth like verbs?

### Games

1. *Think of a subject and guess it asking twenty questions.* The teacher says: "I spy with my little eye something beginning with ..." says and first letter are well planned word... beginning with D.

*Pupils*

Is it a door?

Is it a desk?

Is it a doll?

*Leader*

No, it is not.

No, it is not.

Yes, it is.

2.

*Asking questions guess what word "I am thinking about".*

*Pupils*

Is it a thing?

Is it a vegetable?

Is it an animal?

Is it domestic?

Does it live in the house?

Is it very big?

Can it run?

Is it a cow?

*Leader*

No, it is not.

No, it is not.

Yes, it is.

Yes, it is.

No, it does not.

Yes, it is.

No, it can't.

Yes, it is.

## Play the game

### JAW AND TONGUR GAMES

#### The Jelly Little Clown

*Teacher:* Have you ever been to the circus?

*Bobur:* Of course, we have.

*Teacher:* Who is the main man in the circus ring?

*Zafar:* The clown.

*Teacher:* Can you show how he makes the audience laugh?

Thank you, Sardor. Very nice, indeed! And what does the clown look like, Dildora?

*Dildora:* He has a cap.

*Teacher:* Please, for next time each of you make a clown's cap. Today we'll learn a poem about the jolly clown and then we'll play clowns.

### Train the sounds [t] and [d]

#### Lapping Milk

*Teacher:* Children, have you ever seen a kitten drinking milk? In fact, it doesn't drink it, it laps it. Could you show it? Oh, what nice kittens you are! Now I'll recite a rhyme about it and when I say "lap, lap, lap!", please, make your kittens lap milk.

## Lesson 2

### FRUITFUL CO-OPERATION

**Exercise 1.** Look at the picture and describe what do you see in it.

**Exercise 2.** Speak on what you know about Uzbek and German relations.



## Speech patterns

### Exercise 1.

Can she be so stubborn?	Nahotki u shunday qaysar? (Неужели она такая упрямая?)
Can he be so cruel?	Nahotki u shunday toshbag'ir? Неужели он такой жестокий?
Can Peter be so stupid?	Nahotki u shunday tentak bo'lsa? Неужели Петр такой тупой?
Can Nancy be so bright?	Nahotki Nensi shunday qobiliyatli? Неужели Нэнси такая способная?
Can the girl be so silly?	Nahotki bu qiz shunday tentak bo'lsa? Неужели эта девочка такая глупая?
Why not have a swim?	Nega suzmas ekanman? Почему бы не поплавать?
Why not have a snack?	Nega ovqatlanmas ekanman? Почему бы не перекусить?
Why not have a chat?	Nega suhbatlashmas ekanman? Почему бы не побеседовать?
Why not have a smoke?	Nega chekmas ekanman? Почему бы не покурить?

Here is a pencil for you to write with. Mana sizga yozish uchun qalam.  
Вот карандаш, которым вы можете писать.

Here is the book for her to read. Mana u o'qiydigan kitob. Вот для нее книга, которую она может почитать.

Here are some papers for the chief to sign. Mana xo'jayin imzo qo'yadigan hujjat. Вот документы, которые шеф должен подписать.

Here are some articles for you to look through. Mana siz ko'rishingiz kerak bo'lgan maqolalar. Вот издание, которые вы должны смотреть.

### Exercise 2. Choose the correct adverb.

1. The man stood (*clear, clearly*) of the new apparatus.
2. John is (*high, highly*) respected by his fellow - mates.
3. Mary went there. | (*slow, slowly*)
4. She (*near, nearly*) missed the last bus.
5. I (*last, lastly*) saw her two years ago.
6. The coach comes here (*direct, directly*)
7. After such a long journey I am (*complete, completely*) tired.
8. The door is (*wide, widely*) open.
9. The rain was (*right, rightly*) on my back.



10. This letter is (*rough, roughly*) written.
11. Degree courses are (*most, mostly*) full time in England.
12. It's never too (*late lately*) to mend (*proverb*).

**Exercise 3. Do you know the opposites of these words? Use prefixes.**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. practical   | 8. like        |
| 2. regular     | 9. lead        |
| 3. literate    | 10. acceptable |
| 4. nutrition   | 11. equal      |
| 5. satisfied   | 12. order      |
| 6. natural     | 13. nuclear    |
| 7. experienced | 14. manage     |
| 15. American   | 18. legal      |
| 16. capable    | 19. drinker    |
| 17. understand | 20. honest     |

**Exercise 4. Use the Modal verbs.**

1. Children over 12 ..... pay full price.
2. Visas.....be obtained at the frontier.
3. One.....get a provisional driving licence before one is allowed to drive.
4. You.....pay a fine for parking your car here.
5. I can't visit my grandparents on Wednesday. I write an essay.
6. I can stay in bed late when I don't.....go to school.
7. He.....show his ticket every time? Yes. he was told to.
8. His appendix is very bad. I believe he.....have an emergency operation.
9. I get on the train without a ticket because I didn't get to the station in time to buy it.

**Exercise 5. Fill in the spaces with *must* or *have to*.**

1. It's so cold here that we.....have the fire on all day.
2. You.....behave as you are asked.
3. The bus leaves at 10.30 a.m. We.....be at the bus station by that time.
4. I think all the seats will be taken for the performance so we.....be there on time.
5. I feel that my skirt is too tight. I.....get it let out.
6. My friend tells me that I should look smart for the interview so I'll be well dressed for it.

7. Until it is totally clear, we can't sign this contract. It .....be clear to sign it.

8. I You.....wear a suit otherwise they won't let you in.

**Exercise 6. Fill in *would or should* in the following situations.**

1. You.....see that concert if you have a chance.

2. He.....show more obedience to his mother.

3. Last summer I .....go to swim early every morning.

4. If you.....come to Athens, let me know.

5. What.....I see in my room but a lizard!

6. I call the doctor if I knew you needed some help.

7. ....you mind turning the TV down, please?

8. Who.....ring the bell as I was ready to go out but Jim!

**Exercise 7. Read and retell the dialogue:**

***Keep to the Left***

A street in an English town. A policeman stops a car. In the car there is a visitor from another country.

Policeman (holding up his hand). Stop!

Visitor (in the car). What's the matter?

P. Why are you driving on the right side of the road?

V. Do you want me to drive on the wrong side?

P. You are driving on the wrong side.

V. But you said that I was driving on the right side.

P. That's right. You're on the right, and that's wrong.

V. A strange country! If right is wrong, I'm right when I 'm on the wrong side. So why did you stop me?

P. My dear sir, you must keep to the left. The right side is the left.

V. It's like a looking-glass! I'll try to remember. Well, I want to go to Bellwood. Will you kindly tell me the way?

P. Certainly. At the end of this road, turn left.

V. Now let me think. Turn left! In England left is right, and right is wrong. Am I right?

P. You'll be right if you turn left. But if you turn right, you'll be wrong.

V. Thank you. It's as clear as daylight.

**Exercise 8. Make up all possible questions to which the following sentences can be answers:**

He knows this man very well.

He is playing chess with his son in the library.

She speaks English at the English lessons.

I usually spend my vacation in the South.

She is listening to the latest news on the radio.

**Exercise 9. Memorize the following proverbs and sayings and make up stories illustrating them:**

A good beginning makes a good ending.

A barking dog seldom bites.

Tastes differ.

The exception proves the rule.

It never rains but it pours.

One swallow does not make a summer.

It goes without saying.

**Vocabulary**

establish – tiklamoq, barpo etmoq (устанавливать)

inform the readers on – o‘quvchilarga xabar bermoq (передать читателям)

mutually fruitful and successful cooperation – o‘zaro foydali va mufoffa-qiyatli hamkorlik (взаимовыгодное и успешное сотрудничество)

treaties – shartnomalar (контракты)

transportation base – transportlar bazasi (транспортная база)

deliver – etkazib bermoq (подставлять)

supplier – ta‘minlovchi (обеспечивающий)

legal framework – qonuniy talab ichida (в законном требовании)

legal issues – qonuniy ishlar (законные дела)

relate to – tegishli, aloqador bo‘lmoq (иметь отношение)

funding issues – mablag‘ yig‘ish ishlari (фондовые дела)

on acceding to – ishga kirishish (преступить к делу)

assume – o‘z mas‘uliyatiga olmoq (взять под свою ответственность)

commitments – vazifalar, majburiyatlar (задачи, обязанности)

impose – majburuyat qo‘ymoq (обязать)

obligations – majburiyat (обязанности)

sign – imzo qo‘ymoq (подписать)

agreement (on) – shartnoma (соглашение)

enshrine – saqlamoq (сохранять)

bilateral relations – ikki tomonlama munosabatlar (двусторонние отношения)

confirm – tasdiqlamoq (утверждать)

socially oriented market economy – jamiyatga yo‘naltirilgan bozor iqtisodiyoti (социально-ориентированная рыночная экономика)

economic liberalization – iqtisodga oid keng fikrlilik (экономическая либерализация)

secure – mudofaa qilmoq (оборонять)

prosperity – gullab yashnash (процветание)

security – mudofaa (безопасность)

stability – mustahkamlik (стабильность)

## TEXT

### FRUITFUL CO-OPERATION

A little over ten years ago Uzbekistan Airways established its first representative office abroad-in the Federative Republic of Germany. It is a good reason not only inform our readers on its activity, but also to have a look at relations between Uzbekistan and Germany in general, especially since they can provide an example of mutually fruitful and successful cooperation.

The cooperation between two countries is regulated by a number of treaties both in political, economic and cultural fields. At present, Germany has an air transportation base through which it delivers, supplies them with medical aid. The legal framework for this cooperation is provided by the agreement on Transit across the territory of the Republic of Uzbekistan. The document regulates numerous legal issues related to the right of troop's distribution and stay, flights and funding issues.

Concerning the political field we must remember International organizations upholding universal values of which both Germany and Uzbekistan are members. According to them both countries have assumed certain legal commitments. Membership in the United Nations rates first. However, OSCE membership also imposes important obligations on us.

After a line of new countries joined to the European Union, Europe has become even more important for Uzbekistan. The European Union has signed an agreement on partnership and cooperation with Uzbekistan.

Cultural relations between two countries are fundamentally enshrined in the agreement on cultural cooperation of Germany and Uzbekistan signed at the earliest stage of bilateral relations in 1993. This fact confirms an importance of the cultural sphere for both states.

Germany is interested in Uzbekistan's successful development/Germany had a similar experience: a socially oriented market economy, under which economic liberalization and reform should not be ignored, is good for the population. Success well secure, prosperity, security, and stability.

#### **Exercise1. Answer the following questions:**

1. When did Uzbekistan establish its first representative office in the Federative Republic of Germany?
2. How is the cooperation between Uzbekistan and Germany regulated?
3. What can you say about International organizations upholding universal values?
4. What did the European Union do with Uzbekistan?
5. What is Germany interested in Uzbekistan?
6. What are the educational relations between Uzbekistan and Germany?

#### **Exercise 2. Find the missing words from the text.**

1. It is a good reason not only ..... our readers on its activity, but also to have a look at relations between Uzbekistan and Germany in general, especially since they can provide an example of ..... and ..... cooperation.

2. The document ..... numerous ..... related to the right of troop's ..... and stay, flights and ..... issues.

3. According to them both countries have ..... certain legal ..... membership in the United Nations ..... first.

4. Cultural relations between two countries are fundamentally ..... in the agreement on ..... of Germany and Uzbekistan signed at the earliest stage of ..... in 1993.

5. Germany is interested in Uzbekistan's ..... development.

6. Germany had a similar experience: ..... market economy, under which economic ..... and reform should not be ignored, is good for the population.

**Exercise 3. Which of the following sentences are correct and which of them are incorrect? Give the correct versions of the incorrect sentences.**

1. A little over twenty years ago Uzbekistan Airways established its first representative office abroad-in the Federative Republic of Germany. It is a good reason not only inform our readers on its activity, but also to have a look at relations between Uzbekistan and Germany in general, especially since they can not provide an example of mutually fruitful and successful friendship.

2. Concerning the political field we must remember International organizations upholding universal values of which both Germany and Uzbekistan are members. On according to them Both countries have signed certain legal commitments. Membership in the United Nations rates first. However, OSCE membership also gives duties on us.

3. Cultural relations between two countries are not fundamentally enshrined in the agreement on trade cooperation of Germany and Uzbekistan developed at the earliest stage of bilateral relations in 1993. This fact supports an importance of the cultural sphere for both states.

**Exercise 4. Write the *superlative* degree to complete the sentences.**

1. He is a notorious boy. He is ..... boy in the area.

2. It's a silly joke. It's ..... joke I've ever heard.

3. I haven't eaten such a tasty meal before. It's meal I've ever eaten.

4. It's an expensive necklace. It's ..... necklace I've ever seen.

5. Nile is a long river. It's ..... river in the world.

6. He is a very bad man. He's ..... man in the city.
7. It's a terrible mistake. It's .....mistake you've made.
8. Evi is very fat. She's ..... girl in our school.

**Exercise 5. Complete the sentences using the appropriate degree of the given adjectives.**

1. The weather is getting ..... despite our expectations, (*had*)
2. My younger brother is a doctor. My ..... brother is a lawyer, (*old*)
3. We've never seen such an unusual place. It's ..... place I've ever seen. (*unusual*)
4. Helen was ..... than we thought, (*beautiful*)
5. Jim solved the ..... exercise of the test, (*difficult*)
6. She doesn't work in this bar any ..... (*long*)
7. She isn't my intimate friend any ..... (*much*)
8. Are you the ..... in your family? (*old*)

**Exercise 6. Put quite, rather, or fairly to complete the sentences.**

1. She felt .....confused when she suddenly saw him in the mirror
2. I am ..... certain about the results of the exam.
3. It was ..... a successful party.
4. I'm afraid this test is ..... difficult.
5. His answer was ..... wrong.
6. We had a ..... pleasant excursion.
7. Your behaviour is ..... rude.
8. It's ..... a boring story.
9. It looks ..... miserable.
10. The chemist 's is ..... near my house.
11. The bread seems ..... stale.
12. Everything here is ..... tidy and neat.

**Exercise 7. Put the adverbs into the correct place.**

1. Mary won't take part in the competition, (*probably*)
2. She likes tea (*very much*)
3. He was hurt in an ear accident (*badly*)
4. It has been raining all day yesterday, (*heavily*)
5. I believed his words, (*partly*)
6. He has been there (*often*)
7. She recognised him. (*hardly*)
8. They looked at him. (*suspiciously*)
9. She understands the meaning of his words, (*little*)
10. We learnt the truth yesterday, (*only*)

**Exercise 8. Say if these sentences are *correct* or *incorrect*.**

1. Is she enough well to return home?
2. The mathematician is going to explain his pupils the difficulties.
3. She knows even the details of the story.
4. Recently there has been agreement on this.
5. He goes out in the evenings rarely.
6. We left the room in a hurry.
7. The house was demolished completely.
8. She is to blamed for the accident partially.

**Exercise 9. The following pairs of sentences contain *must* and *have to*.**

**Match them up with possible meanings.**

1. a. I have to have something to eat.  
b. I must have something to eat.  
c. The dietician told me to eat something.  
d. I am hungry.
2. a. We must be at the theatre by 9 o'clock,  
b. We have to be at the theatre by 9 o'clock.  
c. I think the seats will be taken by 9 o'clock,  
d. The doors are closed at 9 o'clock.

**Exercise 10. Modal verbs:**

***can could shall should must may might will would* Which is most likely in these sentences?**

1. You were so rude to me last night; you ..... be ashamed of yourself.
2. You have some nice records; ..... you play me just one before I go?
3. He is making a lot of mistakes; he ..... be too tired!
4. .... she sing? Not, now but she ..... when she was younger.
5. I'll go to the theatre tomorrow come what .....
6. Be careful with that scalding water; you ..... scald yourself.
7. .... you like me to fetch some water for you?
8. .... we have some orange juice or an ice-cream?

**Exercise 11. Learn the following expressions. And fill in the blanks using them.**

*have a cold*

*have a chat*

*have a bath*

*have dinner*

*have a cup of coffee*

*have enough time*

*have a bad temper*

*have an appointment*

*have good taste*

*have the time*

1. Could I speak to John, please? I'm afraid not, he ... at the moment.

2. He hasn't gone to the office today because he .....
3. I think I should ask her round for coffee and ..... with her.
4. .... please? Yes, it's a quarter to nine.
5. While we ..... the phone rang.
6. I was in a hurry so I ..... to stop at Steve's.
7. What do you usually have for breakfast? I usually .....
8. Mr. Smith is expecting you ..... you ..... with him?
9. This medicine .....
10. Whenever I see him he is angry and impatient; he .....

**Exercise 12. In the letters put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense (A variety of tenses will be needed, as well as some conditionals and imperatives; for be able use can/could where possible)**

**A.**

Dear Hilda,

1. I just (hear) that my mother suddenly (be) taken ill and I (like) to go and see how she is. The trouble is I can't take my dog Tim with me. 2 You (think) you (be able) possibly look after him for a week? 3 You (have) him for a week last year, you (remember), and you (say) he (be) no trouble and (get) on well with your dog.

4 If you (be able) have him, I (be able) bring him along any time that (suit) you. 5 He (have) his own bed and bowl and I (bring) enough tinned dog food to last him a week.

6 But if it (not be) convenient, (not hesitate) to say so. 7 There (be) quite good kennels near here, and they (take) him if I (ask), 8 He (be) there once before and (seem) to get on all right.

Love,

Bakhodir

**B.**

Dear Bobur,

9 I (be) very sorry to hear about your mother's illness, and (be) glad that you (go) to Scotland and see how she is. 10 It (be) nice for her to see you.

11 Of course I (look) after Tim. 12 We thoroughly (enjoy) having him last year and my dog (miss) him when he (leave) and (look) for him everywhere, 13 I'm sure he (be) delighted to see him again,

14 You (bring) him on Tuesday afternoon? Or, if that (not suit); any time on Wednesday. 15 (not bother) to bring dog food; I (have) plenty. 16 I hope you (have) time to have tea with me when you (bring) Tim, and that by then you (have) better news of your mother,

Love, Nargiza



## RIDDLES ABOUT WORDS AND LETTERS

1. What is the word, the first two letters of which stand for a man, the first three for a woman, the first four for a brave man and the whole for a brave woman?
2. Why is the word *thousand* like the Sahara desert?
3. What is the longest word in English?
4. Why is the letter *w* quarrelsome?
5. What two letters make something really rotten (инjiq/гнилой)?
6. Why is a selfish friend like the letter *p*?
7. What makes a road broad?
8. What words may be pronounced quicker and shorter by adding syllables to them?
9. Why is the letter *k* like a pig's tail?
10. What is that which occurs twice in a moment, once in a minute and not once in a thousand years?

### Answers:

1. A heroine. 2. Because both contain sand. 3. Smiles, because there is a mile between the first and the last letters. 4. Because it makes ill-will. 5. D, K. 6. Because it's the first in pity and last in help. 7. The letter B. 8. Quick and short. 9. Because it's the end of pork. 10. The letter M.

## A FISH QUESTIONS

3. Ten fish I caught without an eye,  
And nine without a tail,  
Six had no head, and half of eight  
I weighed upon a scale.  
Now who can tell me,  
As I ask it,  
How many fish were in my basket?

4. Two persons are standing near one another. one is looking southward, the other northward. How can they see each other without turning their heads and without using looking-glasses?

### Answers:

1. Three: one behind the other in a row. 2. Place three pieces in one cup and seven in another; then place one of these in the third cup. 3. None. 4. They are looking at each other.

## Lesson 3

### RINGING NATIONS TOGETHER

Exercise 1. Look at the picture and describe what you see in it.

Exercise 2. Guess what the bridges of friendship may be.

Exercise 3. Speak on what you know about Uzbek – Japan relations.



#### Reading passage

Time yourself and begin to read

#### CHINESE VASE

When I was a child I often went to see my grandmother. I thought her house was as beautiful as a palace and the garden seemed bigger than a park.

As I grew older<sup>1</sup> the house and garden seemed smaller but I still loved visiting the old lady. There were so many beautiful things in the house.

Sometimes I played with the doll's house which was older than Grandmother herself; at other times I looked at books which were more interesting than my children's books at home.

I loved her pictures and the old clock, but most of all I loved a big Chinese vase which stood in the hall. It was taller than me, and I could not see inside it. I walked round and round it looking at the beautiful ladies and the birds and flowers and trees, and grandmother often told me stories about these ladies.

When I married I took my two sons to visit their great-grandmother. They did not like the beautiful books and the vase as much as I did. They preferred playing football in the garden.

Before she died, grandmother gave me the vase I loved so much. It was beautiful in our modern hall.

One day I came home from the shops. Two small boys met me at the door. They looked guilty. Paul had a ball in his hands.

**SPEED: Check your reading speed.**

— Time you finished reading . . .

Time you began reading . . .

Reading time: . . . min . . . sec =

**FACTS: Choose the correct answers: a) or b).**

1. I loved my grandmother's pictures and the old clock, but most of all I loved

- a) the old doll's house;
- b) the big Chinese vase.

2. My two sons did not like

- a) the vase as much as I did;
- b) to play football in the garden.

3. Before she died, grandmother gave me

- a) her beautiful pictures and the old clock;
- b) the vase I loved so much.

*Now tell in a few words how you think the story could end.*

*Your reward will be to read the end of the story. Here comes the end.*

"I'm as strong as George Rest, Mummy.," he said. "I got a goal and I broke the vase."

Philip tried to be more diplomatic than Paul. "It doesn't really matter, does it? You told us it wasn't new."

*Why did Philip try to be diplomatic?*

**POINTS FOR DISCUSSION: Tell your opinion.**

1. Why did the mother love the old Chinese vase?
2. Did the boys feel sorry that they broke the vase? Why?
3. What did the boys care for?

**Exercise 1. Put the verbs in their correct tense according to the meaning of each sentence.**

1. Shall I open it now? I'd rather you (*open*) it later.

2. It's very dangerous to leave my post. Suppose the manager (*come*)'.
3. If only I (*be*) here earlier!
4. She behaves as if she (*he*) the boss!
5. It's time you (*leave*).
6. I wish I (*he informed*) earlier. Now, it's too late.
7. I wish I (*speak*) Chinese.
8. I'm very thirsty now. I wish I (*drink*) more water.
9. It's time you (*get*) somebody to clean your house.

**Assignment: Correct the following errors in text**

He forgot for write the date, the month and the, he wrote only the day of the week

One day the bankers received a post card

The bankers sent an answer at once.

The writer of the letter was a child

Everybody praised him because he was punctual and careful in details.

He got the position because he sent his letter at once after reading the advertisement.

**Exercise 2. Read the dialogue paying attention to the Present Perfect Tense**

Once a philosopher was crossing a river in a small boat he asked the boatman:

- Have you ever heard about philosophy?
- No, – said the boatman, – I've never heard about it
- I'm very sorry for you, – said the philosopher. – You've lost a quarter of your life.

Some minutes later the philosopher asked the boatman again.

- Have you ever heard about astronomy?
- No, – replied the boatman, – I've never heard, about it.
- I'm really sorry for you, – said the philosopher It's a very interesting science. You have lost a second quarter of your life.

Some minutes passed and the philosopher asked the boatman again:

- But I suppose you've heard something about algebra, haven't you?
- Not at all, – replied the boatman.
- In that case, – exclaimed the philosopher, you've lost a third quarter of your life.

At that moment the boat ran on a rock. The boatman jumped up and cried:

- Have you ever learned to swim?
- No, – cried the philosopher, – I've never gone in for swimming.

- In that case I am very sorry for you indeed, -said the boatman sadly.
- You've lost your whole life because the boat is sinking

### Assignments:

1. Retell the dialogue.

2. Fill in the blanks with the verbs from the *text* (use Present Perfect);

The philosopher doesn't know that the boatman... about philosophy. The philosopher said to the boatman: «You ... a quarter of your life». When the boat ran on a rock the boat-man asked the philosopher: «... to swim?» The philosopher answered: «I ... for swimming. «The boatman said: «I am sorry for you because you ... your whole life as the boat is sinking».

3. Put questions to the following statements;

You've lost a quarter of your life.

I've never heard about it.

Because he has never gone in for swimming.

So you have lost your whole life.

4. Describe the situations in which you could use the following sentences

I have never heard about it.

I have done it already.

I haven't read about it yet.

They have recently met him.

She hasn't heard from him for a long time (since they graduated from the University).

### Exercise 3. Give a positive answer to the following questions:

1. Do you need to set off at 6 o'clock?
2. Did that car use to belong to you?
3. Did they like the food last night?
4. Were they able to reach the shelter?
5. Do I need to get a visa to go to China'?
6. Do we need to study hard for the exams?
7. Didn't he use to participate in motor races?

### Exercise 4. Give a negative answer to the following questions:

1. Do you need to write the test'?
2. Did you use to like playing the piano?
3. Didn't they have a chance to postgraduate abroad?
4. Have you a time to write a report'?

### Exercise 5. Put the sentences in the *past* making any necessary changes.

1. She is to dance at Herodium next Saturday.
2. It's shocking weather so we can't go for a picnic in the countryside.
3. They would come to the party if they could.

4. I wouldn't beg him if I were you.
5. It must be your first trip abroad.
6. They ought to come earlier by now.
7. The report says he must not take part in the next meeting.
8. You needn't do this research if you don't want to.

### Vocabulary

diverse – farq qiladigan (отличие)  
 bridges of friendship – do'stlik ko'prigi (мост дружбы)  
 design – mo'ljallamoq (предназначать)  
 cultural exchange – madaniy hamkorlik (культурный обмен)  
 provide – ta'minlamoq (обеспечивать)  
 opportunity – imkoniyat (возможность, условие)  
 accomplish – bajarmoq (выполнять)  
 objective – vazifa, maqsad (задача, цель)  
 business management centre – tadbirkorlikni boshqarish markazi (центр управления бизнеса)  
 computer training – kompyuter savodxonligi (компьютерная подготовка)  
 professional management program – kasbiy boshqarish dasturi (программа профессионального управления)  
 include – o'z ichiga olmoq (включать)  
 study of essential object – muhim fanlarni o'rganmoq (изучать важные предметы)  
 arrange – tashkil etmoq (организовать)  
 books sales – kitoblar savdosi (книжная торговля)  
 exhibition – ko'rgazma (выставка)  
 impart – fikr almashmoq (обмениваться мнениями)  
 simplicity – soddalik (простота)  
 modesty – kamtarlik (скромность)  
 bright manifestation of their feeling – o'z hissiyotlarini yorqin ifodalash (выражение своих чувств ярко)  
 thanks to – suyanmoq (biror kishiga, fikrga) (полагатся на)  
 Land of Rising Sun – quyosh chiqar mamlakat (страна восходящего солнца)

### TEXT

### RINGING NATION TOGETHER

As Uzbekistan expands its International contacts, forms of its cooperation with foreign countries become more diverse, especially in the field of culture. The Uzbekistan Japan center for Human Development, established by the

governments of Uzbekistan and Japan in 2001, is one of such “bridges of friendship”.

The center has been founded by the Agency for foreign Economic Relations of Uzbekistan and the Japan International Cooperation Agency. It is designed that the relations, promotes cultural exchange between two countries and provides the people of Uzbekistan with the opportunity to know Japan better.

The center is accomplishing this objective in for directions: organization of business management courses; Japanese language courses and computer training as well as popularization of the Japanese cultural traditions and art.

The 20-weeks Professional Management Program is designed with consideration of specific market conditions in Uzbekistan. It includes the development of business ideas by students, study of essential subjects in order to develop and present the business plans. The Center has already trained over 1300 businessmen and specialists since its foundation.

As for cultural exchange, besides the library, video room and internet resources, the Center arranges various cultural actions, such as Japanese magazines and books sales, calligraphy lessons, open lecture, demonstration of films, exhibitions of traditional toys from all regions of Japan and Japanese cooking.

Mr. Tamura, a volunteer from Japan, carried out courses of tea ceremony, trying to impart a sense of wabi-Japanese style of simplicity and modesty.

The love of the Japanese people to flowers is well-known, which presents a bright manifestation of their feelings and love for the nature. The word “ikebana” being familiar to the majority of Uzbekistan’s people has become even more popular thanks to the classes arranged at the center.

Thus, the center is open to and welcome everybody who wants to know better the Land of Rising Sun, Japan, its people and culture.

### **Exercise 1. Answer the questions:**

1. Why is Uzbek and Japan center called “bridges of friendship”?.
2. What is the task of Uzbek – Japan center?
3. What is the 20-weeks Professional Management Program designed to?
4. What can you say about Uzbek – Japan cultural exchange?
5. What did Mr. Tamura carry out?
6. What does the word “ikebana” mean?

### **Exercise 2. Find the missing words from the text.**

The Uzbekistan Japan center for Human Development, ..... by the governments of Uzbekistan and Japan in 2001 is one of such “bridges of friendship”.

The center is accomplishing this ..... in for directions: organization of ..... ; Japanese language courses and ..... as well as popularization of the Japanese cultural traditions and art.

It includes the development of ..... by students, study of ..... in order to develop and present the business plans.

As .... cultural exchange, besides the library, video room and internet resources, the Center ..... various cultural actions, such as Japanese magazines and books sales, calligraphy lessons, open lecture, demonstration of films, exhibitions of traditional toys from all regions of Japan and Japanese cooking.

The word “ikebana” being familiar to the majority of Uzbekistan’s people has become even more popular ..... the classes arranged at the center.

**Exercise 3. Which of the following sentences are correct and which of them are incorrect? Give the correct versions of the incorrect sentences.**

The center is accomplishing this objective in for directions: organization of trade management courses; Uzbek language courses and computer training as well as popularization of the Japanese cultural traditions and art.

The center has been founded by the Agency for foreign Cultural Relation of Uzbekistan and the Japan International Cooperation Agency. It is designed that the relations, decreases economical exchange between two countries and supports the people of Uzbekistan with the opportunity to know Japan better.

The love of the Japanese people to flowers is well-known, which presents a bright manifestation of their feelings and love for the nature.

Mr. Brown a volunteer from Japan, carried out courses of wedding ceremony, trying to impart a sense of wabi-Uzbek style of simplicity and modesty.

It includes the development of business ideas by students, study of essential subjects in order to develop and present the business plans. The Center has already trained over 1300 businessmen and specialists since its foundation.

**Exercise 4. Fill in the blanks with the prepositions.**

The center is open .... and welcome everybody who wants to know better the Land ....Rising Sun, Japan, its people and culture.

The love ..... the Japanese people..... flowers is well-known, which presents a bright manifestation ..... their feelings and love ..... the nature.

As ... cultural exchange, besides the library, video room and internet resources, the Center arranges various cultural actions, such as Japanese magazines and books sales, calligraphy lessons, open lecture, demonstration of films,

The center has been founded..... the Agency .... foreign Economic Relations of Uzbekistan and the Japan International Cooperation Agency. It is designed that the relations, promotes cultural exchange between two countries



and provides the people ..... Uzbekistan ..... the opportunity to know Japan better.

As Uzbekistan expands its International contacts, forms of its cooperation .....foreign countries become more diverse, especially ..... the field of culture.

**Exercise 5. Put the words in parentheses in their correct place in these sentences.**

1. The children came into the house to have a bath (*tired of playing*)
2. The cards he received today were sent by the same friend (*both*)
3. My pets are sleeping (*all*)
4. I suppose the boys and girls he invited will come to (he meeting (*all*))
5. We visited a beautiful chapel (*Gothic*)
6. The strikers decided to organize a demonstration (*dissatisfied with their employer*)

**Exercise 6. Put the correct possessive pronouns in the blanks.**

1. They went to ..... seats.
2. At Christmas we went to ..... grandmother's.
3. What did Bob buy you for..... birthday?
4. She is German but..... husband is Greek.
5. Are you Italian? No, I'm Greek but..... wife is Italian.
6. He's from Greece..... name is Kostas.
7. I asked a lot of people whether they read horoscopes and what ..... reaction: were.
8. Some people send ..... children to private schools.

**Exercise 7. Put *each* or *every* in the blanks.**

1. She's bought five dresses and ..... one is a different colour.
2. .... time he calls he says he is in love with my sister.
3. .... Sunday he goes to church!
4. .... part of the test is marked differently.
5. The doctor advised him to take these pills..... twelve hours.
6. Use the correct word to fill..... space.
7. Almost..... house in the area has central heating.
8. How many students are there in ..... class?
9. .... boy received a different gift.
10. I have ..... reason to believe his words.

**Exercise 8. Rewrite the following sentences making *equal comparisons* in the negative.**

- 1 New York is bigger than Washington.
2. The first part of the test was more difficult than the second part.
- 3 It's colder today than it was yesterday.

4. Saloniki is more picturesque than Patras.
5. Bob is older than me.
6. Trains are faster than buses.
7. Tonight's film is more boring than yesterday's.

**Exercise 9.** Retell the text putting each sentence into indirect speech, using the verbs *to know, to understand, to remember, to hope, to think* etc. in the Past Indefinite Tense in the principal clause:

### ON THE TRAIN

We are going to have a long journey. I have booked two tickets – a lower and an upper berth in a sleeper. We leave on Saturday at ten fifteen. It is a through train and a stopping one, not an express. We shall not have to change. Our train runs to schedule, it will take us 28 hours to reach our destination. As to our luggage, it is better to give it to a porter and put it in the van. When I travelled by train last year, I placed my suit-case on the rack and kept the handbags with me. During our journey we can have dinner on the train. The dining-car attendant will come to our compartment and we shall be able to order our lunch. There will be two fellow-travellers in our compartment. We shall enjoy our journey.

**Exercise 10. Translate into English:**

Biletlar mening ismimga qoldiriladi, deb javob berishdi (Мне ответили, что билеты будут оставлены на мое имя). Passajir poyezdlar shu kunlarda ba'zan kechga qolishini bildim. (Я знал, что пассажирские поезда очень редко опаздывают теперь). Yuk tashuvchilar ularning yuklarini yuk tashuvchi vagonga olib borishayotganlarini ko'rishdi. (Они увидели, что носильщик несет их вещи к багажному вагону). Samolyot muvaffaqiyatli qo'nganini hamma tushunib yetdi. (Все поняли, что самолет приземлился благополучно). U dengizda sayohat qilishni yoqtirmasligini aytdi. (Он сказал, что плохо переносит путешествие по морю). Men u bilan bitta kupeda ketganligimni esladim. (Я вспомнил, что ехал с ним в одном купе). Uni kuzatib qo'yishga kim kelishini bilgim keldi. (Мне хотелось знать, кто придет провожать ее). Styuardessa 2000 m balandlikda uchayotganimizni e'lon qildi. (Стюардесса объявила, что мы летим на высоте 2000 м).

**Exercise 11. Arrange short dialogues according to the models:**

- I. A. The train *is* behind schedule.
- B. What *did* you say?
- A. I *said* the train was behind schedule.
- C What *did* A. *tell* B.?
- D. He *told* B. that the train *was* behind schedule.
2. A. I *have reserved* a return ticket by phone.

B. What *did* you say?

A. I said I *had reserved* a return ticket by phone.

C What *did* A. tell B.?

D. A. *told* B. he *had reserved* a return ticket by phone.

The seat is vacant.

From the deck I could see the line of the shore.

We are approaching the white cliffs of Dover.

I have enjoyed the voyage.

He is a poor sailor.

It was a non-stop flight.

You will get off at the next stop to change for bus 19.

We were flying at a speed of over 600 km per hour.

### **Exercise 12. Read the dialogue and retell it:**

*In the Street*

A. Where shall we go to-day?

B. It's for you to decide. You know the city better than I do.

A. Well, let's begin with some points of interest. Come this way. please.

B. Please, walk more slowly, I want to have a good look at the city.

A. All right! Do you see that monument at the bottom of the street! It is a monument to A. Navoi, our great Uzbek poet.

B. Oh, yes, I do. What a beautiful monument it is!

A. Let's cross the road and turn into that side-street. I want to show you some interesting buildings.

B. As you like. Everything is of great interest to me. I would like to see everything. I don't like to walk alone. Being a perfect stranger I am afraid to lose my way. I thank you so much for your help.

A. Don't be afraid of that. If you lose your way, you must come to a militiaman or passer-by and ask: «Please, tell me what bus I must take to get to the centre of the city», or «Please, tell me where the trolley-bus stop is», or «Can you show me the nearest way to the Post Office?» or something like that.

B. But I am afraid he will not understand me. I don't know Uzbek well enough.

A. Never mind! I am sure everybody will try to help you.

B. You set.. I understand quite well when people speak slowly, but most people speak too quickly. By the way, where does this main street lead?

A. It leads straight to Navoi street.

B. Is the metro far from here?

What letter is it?

a) The beginning of evening,

The end of time and space,

b) The poor have two,

The rich have none,

The beginning of every end,  
And the end of every place.

Millions have many,  
You have one.

### **Exercise 13. Memory Game**

*Teacher:* Zafar, you promised to bring the book your father had brought from Moscow.

*Zafar:* I am very sorry but I forgot it.

*Teacher:* Did you? What a poor memory you have. Children, how do you train your memory? What does this long silence mean?

*Dilorom:* Is it possible to train your memory?

*Teacher:* No doubt. Bobur, what are the capitals of England and the USA?

*Bobur:* London and Washington.

*Teacher:* Dilbar, repeat what Bobur has said and tell us the name of the capital of France.

*Dilbar:* Paris, London, Washington.

*Teacher:* I am very sorry but you've made a mistake. He said, London, Washington and then Paris. Let us continue training our memories.

### **RIDDLES**

1. He is not French, he is not Greek;  
He tells us how to write and speak,  
But in a language not our own –  
Which none of us could do alone.
2. What word of three syllables contains twenty-six letters?
3. What is it you keep in your schoolbag and that shows how you learn your lessons?
4. What tells you answers, but gets you bad marks and is not a person?
5. What is small and black,  
With a tail and bent back.  
It doesn't bark, it doesn't bite,  
But it doesn't let you pass  
From one form to the next.
6. What is it that gives light to the world although it's the black?

#### **Answers:**

1. A teacher. 2. Alphabet. 3. Your day-book. 4. A crib. 5. A "two". 6. Ink.

### **What and Why**

1. What match can't be put in a match-box?
2. How can you keep cool at a football match?
3. What star is not seen in the sky?

4. What horse needs no food?
5. Why can man not live inside the house?
6. What can you drop without losing anything?
7. When is a fool wise?
8. Why is a cherry like a book?
9. What is everything doing at the same time?
10. What is the difference between a schoolmaster and an engine-driver?

**Answers:**

1. A football match. 2. Sit next to a fan. 3. A film star. 4. An iron horse (paravoz). 5. A snowman. 6. A bad habit. 7. When he is silent. 8. Because it is read. 9. Growing older. 10. One minds (boshqaradi) the train and the other trains the mind.

**Lesson 4**

**ANCIENT DIPLOMATIC LINKS**

**Exercise 1.** Look at the picture and describe what you see in it.

**Exercise 2.** Guess what international relationship is depicted in the picture.

**Exercise 3.** Speak on what you know about Uzbek-Spanish international relations.



## **Playing game for the pronunciation of the sound [v]**

### **Playing Airplane**

*Teacher:* Did you ever try to imitate a flying plane? I think you stretched your arms apart, inclined your body a little, and here you are... flying. And now about English children? They do just the same, with a little difference: instead of the Russian sound [ж] they say [v]. Try and do the way the English children of your age do.

The plane is travelling up in the sky,  
vvv — vvv — vvv,  
Moving so fast, and ever so high,  
vvv — vvv — vvv.  
Over the land, and over the sea,  
vvv — vvv — vvv.  
But we always come back in time for to,  
vvv — vvv — vvv.

## **Playing game for the pronunciation of the sound [t]**

### **The Motor-Boat**

*Teacher:* And how could you imitate the work of a motor boat? How do English children imitate it when playing? They believe that the sound [t] suits here best. You are surprised, aren't you? It's no wonder because the Russian sound [T] wouldn't do here. But only try and say "putt, putt, putt" and the motor will start, and you will be gliding over the river. Let's try and do it together!

I have a little motor boat.  
It turns around the bay, And when I start my motor boat  
It always seems to say.

### **Speech patterns**

1. I am keen on architecture.  
Henry is keen on history.  
Ben is keen on football.  
She is not very keen on jazz.  
Steve is keen on horses.  
What are you keen on?  
She is keen on mountaineering.
2. Do you want me to help you?  
Do you want Peter to know it?  
Does Helen want us to come?

Does Peter want her to leave?  
Do they want him to marry Jane?  
Do we want Alice to become a singer?

3. Are you interested in history?  
Are you interested in signing the contract?  
Are you interested in my discussing the matter?  
Is he interested in our going to Minsk?  
Is she interested in solving the problem?  
Are they interested in working there?

4. Did you see Ann leave the house?  
Did you watch them play golf?  
Did she hear me sing?  
Did Bob notice him turn the corner?  
Did Helen hear us speak about it?  
Did Peter hear you pronounce his name?

**Exercise 1. Make questions about the italicized words.**

1. Canadians speak *English*,
2. They live *on the third floor*.
3. Palamas was *Greek*.
4. *The Astir Palace* is a well known hotel in Athens.
5. He's got *three* children.
6. He reads *science fiction* books.
7. I'm looking for *the police station*.
8. He doesn't believe in *ghosts*.
9. Robert goes *to bed at 10 p.m.*
10. The meeting ended *after midnight*.
11. She left *because she was tired*.
12. I'll buy *the* red sweater.
13. He arrived in Athens *by plane*.

**Exercise 2. Complete the sentences with: who, which, whose, whom.**

1. We've got some friends ..... work in this firm.
2. This is the record ..... I like most.
3. Mr. Johnson ..... you saw last night, is my uncle.
4. The problem ..... we solved was not very easy.
5. He's the doctor ..... saved my mother's life.
6. There's the woman ..... husband is a singer.
7. This is the firm's budget of ..... the manager spoke last week.
8. There's a sofa on ..... you can sit for a while.

9. The girl ..... father is a priest is a friend of mine.
10. My elder brother ..... works as an accountant is twenty eight years old.
11. That's the cat ..... scratched me.
12. What's the name of the man ..... is sitting in the front row?
13. The woman ..... you met an hour ago is a colleague of mine.
14. This is Judy ..... brother works for us.

**Exercise 3. Fill in the correct prepositions:**

1. She gave a party ..... their guests' honour.
2. We haven't heard ..... him for long time.
3. He complained ..... me ..... his wife.
4. She spilled half the coffee ..... herself.
5. His office is .... the outskirts of Athens.
6. The postman was standing ..... the doorway.
7. While in Britain one is exposed ..... English from morning to night.
8. He was born ....Germany but he was sent .....school. Barrow Austria.
9. Rafina is ..... the east of Athens (outside Athens).
10. Agia Paraskevi is ..... the east of Athens (inside Athens).

**Exercise 4. Replace the italicized words with personal pronouns in the nominative and objective case.**

1. Ask *Bob and Ann* about *their school*.
2. *Mr. and Mrs. Smith* work in a foreign company.
3. Send *John* a postcard.
4. *Mr. Black* is dictating a business letter to *his secretary*.
5. *Jean and I* organized the excursion.
6. *The car* is mine.
7. How much do *these bananas* cost'?
- S. *Mr. baby* is two years old.

**Exercise 5. Choose the right personal or possessive pronoun.**

1. Maria told (*its we*) to carry our passports wherever (*us/we*) may go.
2. How was the performance? (*It/It*; was quite boring).
3. Hello. Jane. How are the children? (*They then*) are O.K. How are (*your/ yours*).
4. Mina's boss is abroad on business and (*he his him*) has asked (*she/her/ hers*) to care of the whole business while (*he him his*) is away.
5. I left (*my/mine*) at home. Could you lend (*me/mine I*) (*your yours*).
6. Mother told (*I me*) to have my identity card with (*me her*).
7. You haven't got any books today. Take (*mine/me/my*).
8. I met one of your colleagues. I met *one* of (*their/them/they*).
9. She looked at the children. She looked at (*they/us/them*).



10. I built it alone; no one helped (*I/me/you*).
11. This scarf is not (*her/his/my*). It's (*her hers*)
12. The black coat you are putting *on now* is (*my/her/mine*).
13. Is this your parents' house? Yes. it's (*their/them/theirs*)
14. Maria has a lot of toys. They are (*her/hers/hers'*).
15. Do you like apples? Yes. I like (*them/it/theirs*)

**Exercise 6. Rewrite the sentences, changing the position of the indirect object and using a pronoun.**

1. Sophia is teaching the students Maths.
2. He gave the waitress a tip.
3. Sheila left James a message.
4. The travellers showed the customs official their passports.
5. We found the visitors a youth hostel.
6. My parents sent the headmaster a letter.
7. My lather brought my brother and I some fruit.
8. You ordered yourself ice-cream.
9. Pass the children some cake.

**Exercise 7. Put the correct interrogative pronouns.**

1. .... is this taperecorder? It's Bobur's.
2. .... time is it? It's ten o'clock.
3. .... did you hide when she came/ Under the bed.
4. .... far is it from here to the railway station? It's ten minutes' walk.
5. .... called you last night? Muhabbat did.
6. .... don't you come to the party? Because I must visit my grand-parents
7. .... will you travel to Zafar? By train.
8. .... is your favourite magazine? It's Sardor?
9. .... is her birthday? It's *on* August 26th.

**Exercise 8. Use the correct form of the verbs below to fill in these sentences. All of them refer to *future*,**

*fly ask call type work leave arrive send have sleep*

1. Don't disturb him for the next hour, he ..... a report.
2. I.....our office in London first thing tomorrow morning.
3. The last train to London ..... at 10:30 p.m.
4. Will he be able to find out when he ..... ?
5. Excuse me. Dildora, when ..... you.....this letter to Shohjahon?

6. Tomorrow the strikers ..... for a pay rise and that's definite.
7. I ..... to Andijan on Monday.
8. By the time he retires, he ..... in this job for 35 years.
9. ....Don't call between four and six o'clock. I .....then.
10. Kahramon ..... dinner with us but his child broke his arm.

**Exercise 9. Your friend is planning to give a party. Think about all the questions you could ask about his/her party. Use the *Going to Future*.**

1. When/have?
2. How many/invite?
3. Invite/anyone/office?
4. Prepare/everything/yourself?
5. Ask/parents/leave/house?

**Exercise 10. Fill in the blank with the appropriate adjective or adverb.**

Approximately the same meaning as *very*: *extremely*, *really*, *highly*, *quite*, *considerably*, etc. For example:

A D V ----- A D J ----- N  
 extremely interesting person;  
 real/really

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ a story
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ frightened
- 3 smelled \_\_\_\_\_ good
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ quickly
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ diamonds
- 6 appeared \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_ original poem
- 8 appeared \_\_\_\_\_ sad
- 9 shouted \_\_\_\_\_ loudly
- 10 with \_\_\_\_\_ sincerity

V - A D V -A D V  
 walked really slowly  
 extreme/extremely

- 11 \_\_\_\_\_ long
- 12 \_\_\_\_\_ heat
- 13 was \_\_\_\_\_ depressed
- 14 in an \_\_\_\_\_ way
- 15 was \_\_\_\_\_
- 16 \_\_\_\_\_ amusing
- 17 in an \_\_\_\_\_ loud voice
- 18 became \_\_\_\_\_ quiet
- 19 \_\_\_\_\_ well-known
- 20 with \_\_\_\_\_ pleasure

**Exercise 11. Fill in the blanks with the correct comparative and superlative forms of adjectives.**

	comparative	superlative
1 old	_____	_____
2 happy	_____	_____
3 foolish	_____	_____
4 thin	_____	_____
5 enthusiastic	_____	_____

6	strange	_____	_____
7	crazy	_____	_____
8	interesting	_____	_____
9	energetic	_____	_____
10	funny	_____	_____
11	slow	_____	_____
12	regular	_____	_____
13	messy	_____	_____
14	common	_____	_____
15	wise	_____	_____

### Vocabulary

On a hot summer day – yozning issiq kunlaridan birida (один из жарких дней лета)

mission – missiya, tashrif

to be headedly – boshqarilmoq (управляться)

appoint – tayinlamoq (назначить)

return visit – javob tashrifi (ответный визит)

triumphal victory – tantanali g'alaba (триумфальная победа)

capture – bosib olish, ishg'ol qilish (захват)

threat of invasion – bosib olish xavfi (угроза завоевания)

envoy – yuborilgan odam (посланный человек)

strengthen – mustahkamlamoq (укреплять)

arrive (in, at) – kelmoq (приехать, прибывать)

unique written testimony – nodir yozma ko'rsatma (уникальное письменное доказательство)

dedicate (to) – bag'ishlamoq (посвящать)

court ceremonies – sud marosimlari (судебная церемония)

sumptuous royal receptions – yuqori darajadagi qirol qabuli (приём королевский на высшем уровне)

luxury of palaces – saroylar hashamati (роскошь дворцов)

courtiers – saroy xizmatchisi (слуги дворца)

pavilions – pavillionlar (ayvonlar) (павильон)

craft – kasb, hunar (ремесло)

### TEXT

#### ANCIENT DIPLOMATIC LINKS

On a hot summer day, in 1404, a mission from far-away castile arrived at the palace of the Movarrounahr king Amir Temur known in Europe as Tamerlane. The mission was headed by Spanish Nobleman Ruy Gonzalez do

Clarijo. The event happened 600 years ago and was so important in the history of these two countries that it has been widely celebrated in the homeland of the Spanish grandee this year.

The mission appointed by Enrico the third king of Castile and Leon, was a return visit of the Spaniards. After triumphal victory over Turkey and the capital of Sultan Bayazid, Amir Temur received congratulations from the Spanish king, because by his victory he eliminated the threat of invasion of Europe by the troops of the Ottoman Empire. Sahibkiran, as Amir Temur was called in his native land, then sent his envoy to Madrid with gifts, in order to “strengthen friendship”. And then, the return mission arrived in Movarrunahr bringing rich presents and the letter from the Spanish king. Ruy Gonzalez de Clavijo has left behind a unique written testimony about the life of Amir Temur and his country.

The Diary has remained an important source in the history, ceremony, culture and everyday life in the Middle East and central Asia in the early XVth century. In his Diary de Clarijo dedicated many pages to Temurlane’s biography, his relations, military campaigns, trade and diplomatic activity. He described in detail the city of Samarkand, court ceremonies, sumptuous royal receptions and celebrations. De Clarijo described in detail the luxury of the palaces in Samarkand and the pavilions of Temurlane and members of his family and courtiers. He was especially amazed by the pavilions of Temurlane’s eldest wife Kanyo (Bibi-Khanum). Some pages of the Diary were dedicated to the development of crafts and trade in Samarkand.

### **Exercise 1. Answer the questions:**

1. When was the mission of the Spanish nobleman Ruy Gonzalez de Clarijo to Movarrunahr? 2. What was the reason of the mission of the Spaniards to Movarrunahr? 3. Why did Amir Temur receive congratulations from the Spanish king? 4. What did Ruy Gonzalez de Clarijo leave behind? 5. What is the Diary dedicated? 6. What did Ruy Gonzalez de Clarijo describe in the Diary?

### **Exercise 2. Fill in the prepositions.**

The mission was headed .... Spanish Nobleman Ruy Gonzalez de Clarijo. The event happened 600 years ago and was so important ... the history of these two countries that it has been widely celebrated ..... the homeland of the Spanish grandee this year. Sahibkiran, as Amir Temur was called .... his native land, then sent his envoy.... Madrid with gifts, ....order... “strengthen friendship”. The Diary has remained an important source ... the history, ceremony, culture and everyday life... the Middle East and central Asia in the early XVth century. He described .... detail the city ... Samarkand, court ceremonies, sumptuous royal receptions and celebrations. He was especially amazed .... the pavilions .... Temurlane’s eldest wife Kanyo (Bibi-Khanum).

**Exercise 3. Find the missing words from the text.**

He described in detail the city of Samarkand, court ceremonies, sumptuous royal receptions and celebrations. De Clarijo described in detail ..... in Samarkand and ..... Temurlane and member of his family and ..... And then, the ..... arrived in Movarrounahr bringing rich present and the letter from the Spanish king. Ruy Gonzalez de Clarijo has left behind a Unique written ..... about the life of Amir Temur and his country. On a ....., in 1404, a mission from far-away castile arrived at the palace of the Movarrounahr king Amir Temur known in Europe as Tamerlane. The mission ..... by Enrico the third king of castle and Zeone, was a ..... of the Speniards. The capital of Sultan Bayazid, Amir Temur received ..... from the Spanish ring, because by his victory he ..... the ..... of Europe by the ..... the ottoman Empire.

**Exercise 4. Fill in the blanks with the correct reflexive pronoun.**

- 1 Billy, would you like me to help you or can you do it by ..... ?
- 2 Did you tidy the room ..... ? It looks rather a mess.
3. She looked at ..... in the mirror.
4. I bought ..... a woolen sweater on my last visit to England.
5. He mended the roof all by .....
6. Does she live by ..... in this Hat?
7. Peter must do the work .....
8. John and George, who helped you solve the problem? Nobody, we did it
9. We enjoyed ..... at her party.

**Exercise 5. Fill in reflexive reciprocal pronouns?**

1. We quarreled yesterday. We are still not speaking to .....
2. Sophia and Katia don't like .....
3. She was sitting in an armchair talking to .....when suddenly the door bell rang.
4. My husband and I see ..... only in the evening.
5. Sit down *on* the sofa and tell me how you locked in the bathroom.
6. My friend Solange and I haven't seen ..... for a long time.
7. Students give ..... presents at the end of each school year.

**Exercise 6. Write the correct distributive pronoun among: all, everyone, everything.**

1. .... that I told him before is true.
2. Let me tell you ..... about their plans.
3. She is very kind and sweet ..... likes her.
4. He believes that money is ..... in the world.
5. The doctor did ..... he could to help the injured man.

**Exercise 7. Rewrite the sentences using a possessive form.**

1. The boys have a large bedroom.
2. Charles has a new flat.
3. The couple have got a baby who is sleeping
4. The flat has a modern fireplace.

**Exercise 8. Select the most suitable form to complete the meaning.**

1. Jim and his wife have got.....next month  
a. *a holiday of a week*                      c. *a week holiday*  
b. *a weeks' holiday*                      d. *a week's holiday*
2. Here are.....  
a. *my son's friends*                      c. *my friends son*  
b. *friends of son*                      d. *my sons friends*
3. Look at these .....  
a. *gentlemen's hats*                      c. *gentlemens' hats*  
b. *hats of gentlemen*                      d. *gentlemens hats*
4. The 1st of April is called .....  
a. *April Fool's Day*                      c. *April Fools' Day*  
b. *April Fool Day*                      d. *April Day of Fool*
5. My dress isn't as new as .....  
a. *Janes'*                      c. *Jane's*  
b. *Jane*                      d. *Janes*
6. My husband is at his .....  
a. *brother's*                      c. *brothers*  
b. *brother*                      d. *brothers's*
7. That .....car is very nice.  
a. *men's*                      c. *mens*  
b. *mans*                      d. *man's*
8. My mother is.....  
a. *of the baker.*                      c. *at the baker*  
b. *at baker*                      d. *at the baker's*
9. He is .....teacher.  
a. *Peter's and Bob's*                      c. *Peter and Bobs*  
b. *Peter's and Bob*                      d. *Peter and Bob's*

**Exercise 9. Structure and Written Expressions:**

**Objective:** To determine whether a sentence contains a verb tense error, or another type of error.

**Directions:** Identify the one underlined word or phrase, (A), (B), (C), or (D), that should be corrected or rewritten. Write your answer in the blank.

1 The party could not be called success because so few people that were invited

A B C  
actually came.

D

2 The Johnston family have been living in a tiny apartment since they move to town

A B C D

last September.

3 Over the past few years medical researchers have searching for a means to control the herpes virus.

D

4 The pilot that was killed in the crash maintains an outstanding record of safety.

A B C D

5 For some time now, television advertising is tightly controlled by the Federal

A B C D

Communications Commission.

6 The cost of groceries have risen so rapidly during the past several years that lower-

A B C

income families can scarcely buy what they need.

D

7 After the horse had threw the jockey several times, its owners decided it was best

A B

to withdraw it from the upcoming race.

C D

8 Although Latin was extreme important in its day, it has been considered a dead

A B C

language since the fall of the Roman Empire.

D

9. Christianity has become a worldwide religion since it has begun almost two thousand years ago.

A B C D

10 Although the students are disliking the material they are studying right now, their

A B C

instructor has no authority to change the syllabus.

D

### Telephone conversations

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense and fill die spaces with suitable forms.

A.

1. Caller: This is Mrs. Jones at 22 High Street. ... I have an appointment for a shampoo and set, please?

2. Receptionist: Yes, Mrs. Jones. Who usually (do) your hair?

3. Caller: Peter usually (do) it, but the last time I (come) he is on holiday and Ann (do) it. So if Peter (be) not available, Ann (do) very well.

4. Receptionist: When you (want; to come, Mrs. Jones?

5. Caller: I (like) to come tomorrow afternoon if it is possible.

6. Receptionist: I'm afraid that that afternoon is full. Thursday afternoon at 4.0 (suit) you?

7. Caller: I'm afraid it ... . My mother-in-law (come) to tea.

8. Receptionist: Then what about Friday afternoon?

9. Caller: That (be) splendid. Thank you very much.

10. Receptionist: Thank you, Mrs. Jones. We (expect) you at 1, Friday then. Goodbye.

### Lesson 5

## INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC TIES AND FOREIGN TRADE

### Speech patterns

1. Henry demands that you should tell him everything. Genri siz unga hammasini aytib berishingizni talab qiladi (Генри требует, чтобы вы ему все рассказали).





The manager demanded all those present should go to room 101. Boshqaruvchi hammani 101 xonaga o'ishlarini talab qildi. (Управляющий требует, чтобы все присутствующие перешли в аудиторию 101.)

Martin demands we give him all the money. Martin biz unga hamma pullarni berganligimizni talab qiladi. (Мартин требует, чтобы мы ему отдали все деньги.)

The prisoner demanded a trial. Mahbus sud jarayonini talab etdi. (Заключенный потребовал судебного процесса.)

The letter demands an immediate answer. Bu xatga tezda javob yozish kerak. (На это письмо надо немедленно ответить.)

2. My watch is a little fast. Your watch is slow. Soatim biroz oldinlab ketayapti. Sizning soatingiz orqada qolyapti. (Мои часы немного спешат. Ваши часы отстают)

Ann's watch is right. Annaning soati to'g'ri. (Часы Анны точные.)

Peter's watch is ten minutes slow. Pyotrning soati 10 minut orqada. (Часы Петра на десять минут отстают.)

Susan's watch is three minutes fast. Syusanning soati 3 minut oldinda. (Часы Сюзан спешат на три минуты.)

3. Robert feels guilty. Robert o'zini aybdor his qilyapti. (Роберт чувствует себя виноватым.)

Ann feels well. Anna o'zini yaxshi sezayapti. (Анна хорошо себя чувствует.)

Jane feels helpless. Jeyn yordamga muhtoj. (Джейн чувствует себя беспомощной.)

George feels awkward. Jorj o'zini noqulay sazayapti. (Георг чувствует себя неловко.)

You won't have to wait long. Sizga uzoq kutishga to'g'ri kelmaydi. (Вам не придется ждать долго.)

James won't have to make a speech. Jeymsni so'zga chiqishi shart emas. (Джеймсу не придется выступать.)

John won't have to pick them up. Jon uning orqasidan borishi shart emas. (Джон не должен будет за ними заезжать.)

Henry won't have to get up early. Genrining erta turishi shart emas. (Генри не придется рано вставать.)

Ann won't have to cook dinner. Anna tushlik tayyorlashi shart emas. (Анне не придется готовить обед.)

4. Take what you like. Hohlagingizni oling. (Возьмите, что хотите.)

He took the house for a year. U uyni bir yilga ijaraga oldi. (Он снял дом на год.)

Take the letter to the post. Xatni pochtaga olib boring. (Отнесите письмо на почту.)

Will you take tea or coffee? Siz choy ichasizmi yoki kofe? (Вы возьмете чай или кофе?)

Who has taken my pen? Mening ruchkamni kim oldi. (Кто взял мою ручку?)

Take care what you say. Ehtiyot bo'lib gapiring. (Следите за тем, что говорите.)

**Exercise 1. Put a few or a little to complete sentences.**

1. The hotel is only ..... miles from here.
2. It is said that in ..... years there will be a shortage fuel.
3. She's bought ..... meat.
4. Put..... sugar in my coffee.
5. There are .....apples in the fridge.
6. .... hours ago they left for Samarkand.
7. I'd like ..... more milk in my coffee.
8. She knows only ..... English words.

**Exercise 2. Put little, many, few, no, a little, a few, much, a lot (of)**

1. The Ahmedovs have very ..... money.
2. There were ..... magazines left on the shelves.
3. So ..... people came to the meeting; that it wasn't worth hiring such a large hall.
4. There weren't ..... fans outside the field.
5. Do you drink ..... coffee?

**Exercise 3. Put the verbs in their correct tense according to the meaning of each sentence.**

1. Shall I open it now? I'd rather you (*open*) it later.
4. It's very dangerous to leave my post. Suppose the manager (*come*)'.
5. If only I (*be*) here earlier!
4. She behaves as if she (*he*) the boss!
5. It's time you (*leave*).
8. I wish I (*he informed*) earlier. Now, it's too late.
9. I wish I (*speak*) English.
8. I'm very thirsty now. I wish I (*drink*) more water.
9. It's time you (*get*) somebody to clean your house.

**Exercise 4. Put the correct tense of the verbs in brackets, according to the meaning of the sentences.**

1. The Minister of Foreign Affairs ..... to Moscow tomorrow, (*fly*)

2. Write to us as soon as you ..... our letter, (*get*)
4. What the children ..... ? An ice-cream. (*eat*)
5. Where is your brother? He ..... a bath. (*have*)
6. World population ..... at about 2.5% each year. (*increase*)
7. The weather wasn't good yesterday but today it.....better. (*be*)
8. I ..... an exam next week. (*have*)

**Exercise 5. Put the correct Present Tense to complete the sentences:**

1. Where your friend Shohjahon ..... ? (*come from*)
2. I plan to go to Bukhara in a week's time but I still..... for my visa, (*wait*)
3. Experienceme not to argue with anybody about such trivial thing (*teach*)
4. Itoday because it's Sunday, (*not work*)
5. You ever ..... Uzbek? (*learn*)
6. Dilbar ..... for some time as an interpreter, (*work*)
7. Ion this experiment for the last six months, (*work*)
8. He continually ..... me with silly questions, (*annoy*)
9. When you ..... that novel bring it back, will you? (*read*)
10. What languages you ..... ? (*speak*)

**Exercise 6. Time yourself and begin to read.**

**WANTED: A GOLDFISH**

A professor of physiology, whose name was Floyd, was out visiting one winter night, and the people at the house showed him a goldfish that had died because the water that it was in had got frozen. The professor looked at the fish and said, "Let me take it home and I think that tomorrow I can treat it in the laboratory and revive it.

*Now indicate the logic sequence of the parts of the story which follow.*

1. Floyd knelt down to pick it up, but he couldn't find it and stayed there on his knees looking for it. Just then a policeman came along. He stopped and said, "What are you doing there?"

2. To please him the policeman knelt down and began looking in the snow and out came a goldfish! He was very much surprised.

3. Professor hate to be questioned. Floyd just looked over his shoulder and said, "I am trying to find a goldfish."

4. "Great heavens"! he said. "Are there any more?" "Maybe a whole lot," Floyd said. As the professor started off for home again, the policeman was still on his knees looking for goldfish.

5. The policeman then understood that he was dealing with a madman, and he said, "Now you just come along with me and I'll take you to a place where

we've a whole lot of goldfish – all you want.” “All right,” Floyd said, “only just help me to get this, one first

6. So when he started for home they wrapped the goldfish in a bit of paper and professor Floyd put it in his overcoat pocket. It was a cold night, very late and with lots of deep snow along the street. On the way home Floyd put his hand into his coat pocket and accidentally flipped out<sup>6</sup> the gold-fish and it fell into the snow.

(After Stephen Leacock)  
(294 words)

**SPEED:** Check your reading speed.

Time you finished reading . . .

Time you began reading . . .

---

Reading time: . . . min ..... sec

**Exercise 7. Choose the correct answer, a), b) or c).**

1. The people at the house showed the professor
  - a) an old gold coin;
  - b) a goldfish.
2. The professor said,
  - a) “How very interesting!”
  - b) “I’m sorry it has got frozen.”
  - c) “Let me take it home.”
3. When the goldfish fell into the snow the professor
  - a) knelt down to pick it up;
  - b) did not stop to look for it;
  - c) could not find it.
4. The policeman
  - a) began to look for the goldfish;
  - b) took professor Floyd to the police-station;
  - c) took professor Floyd to hospital.

**Exercise 8. Points for discussion: Tell your opinion.**

1. What surprise did you get in the story? 2. Could such an incident possibly happen? flipped out – 36.

Intelligent guessing: Look at the pictures of page 17 and say which pictures are correct.

**Exercise 9. Points for discussion: Tell your opinion.**

1. How many airports are there in London? 2. Do you know how many airports there are in Moscow and how do you get to them?

## Vocabulary

- foreign partners – chet ellik sheriklar (иностранные партнёры)  
joint ventures – qo‘shma korxonalar (совместные предприятия)  
international foreign trade firms – xalqaro chet el firmalari (международные торговые иностранные фирмы)  
enterprises – korxonalar (предприятия)  
external – doimiy, abadiy (внешний)  
manufactures – ishlab chiqarish (производство)  
trade relations – savdo aloqalari (торговые отношения)  
leading partners – asosiy, bosh sheriklar (ведущие партнёры)  
important item – muhim bandi, joyi (важный пункт)  
equipment – jihoz (оборудование)  
power transformers – kuchli transformatorlar (силовые трансформаторы)  
refrigerators – muzlatgichlar (холодильники)  
transport facilities – transport vositalari (транспортные средства)  
food products – oziq mahsulotlari (пищевые продукты)  
raw materials – xomashyo (сырьё)  
consumer goods – ehtiyoj tovarlar (потребительские товары)  
large volumes of cotton fibre – katta hajmdagi paxta tolasi (большой объем хлопковолокна)  
cotton picking machines – paxta teradigan mashina (хлопкоуборочная машина)  
fertilizers – o‘g‘itlar (удобрения)  
means of communication – aloqa vositalari (средства коммуникации)  
non ferrous metals – rangli metallar (цветные металлы)

## TEXT

### INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC TIES AND FOREIGN TRADE

At present, the process of formation of foreign economic complex of the Republic is taken place. New forms of economic cooperation with foreign partner are developing number of joint ventures is growing, association for business cooperation with foreign countries, international foreign trade firms are being set up and start their activity.

The enterprises have possibility on their own enter the external market of manufactures. At present, about 1200 participants of foreign economic activity are registered in the republic.

The Republic of Uzbekistan has trade relations with more than 70 countries in the world.

Countries of Eastern and Western Europe are leading partners in the foreign trade of the republic. The most important item in Uzbekistan export is still cotton.

Uzbekistan exports machines, equipment, tractors in particular compressors, communication equipment, power transformers, refrigerators, etc., to these countries.

The main item of Uzbekistan's import from European countries are machines for their production, as well as consumer goods.

In Latin America, Argentina is the main partner of Uzbekistan. The republic exports large volumes of cotton fibre, cotton picking machines, tractors, compressors, diesels, communication equipment. fertilizers, etc., To Cuba.

The main trade partners in Asia are China, Vietnam, India, Traditional partners are bordering and adjacent Afganistan and Pakistan. Uzbekistan delivers agricultural machines and equipment, means of communication, non ferrous metals, fertilizers and other goods to these countries. The main items of import are food products, medicines, consumer goods etc.

### **Exercise 1. Answer the following questions.**

1. What kind of economic cooperation with foreign countries is developing? 2. How many participants of foreign economic activity is registered in Uzbekistan? 3. How many foreign countries does the Republic of Uzbekistan have Trade Relations with? 4. Which of the countries is the leading partners in the foreign trade of the Republic?

5. What is the most important item of export in Uzbekistan? 6. Which countries are the main partners of the Republic of Uzbekistan?

### **Exercise 2. Fill in the blanks with prepositions where necessary.**

The Republic .... Uzbekistan has trade relations .... more than 70 countries ... the world. ... these countries Uzbekistan exports .....machines, equipment, tractors.... particular compressors, communication equipment, power transformers, refrigerators, etc..... exports large volumes ....cotton fibre, cotton picking machines, tractors, compressors, diesels, communication equipment. fertilizers, etc.

Uzbekistan delivers agricultural machines and equipment, means .... communication, non ferrous metals, .....fertilizers and other goods ..... these countries. New forms..... economic cooperation..... foreign partner are developing number ... joint ventures is growing, ....association for business cooperation with foreign countries, international foreign trade firms are being set .... and start their activity.

### **Exercise 3. Fill in the blanks with articles where necessary.**

.... main items of import are food products, .....medicines, consumer goods, etc. ....main trade partners in ....Asia are China, Vietnam, India, Traditional

partners are bordering and adjacent ...Afghanistan and Pakistan. .... Republic of Uzbekistan has trade relations with..... more than 70 countries in.... world. The enterprises have possibility on their own enter .... external market of manufactures. New forms of economic cooperation with foreign partner are developing number of joint ventures is growing, association for business .....cooperation with foreign countries.

**Exercise 4. Fill in the blanks with missing word and expressions from the text.**

Countries of Eastern and Western Europe are ..... in the foreign trade of the republic. The most important .... in Uzbekistan export is still cotton. The ..... have possibility on their own enter the ..... At present, the process of formation of foreign ..... of the Republic is taken place. In Latin America, Argentina is the ..... of Uzbekistan. The republic exports large volumes of ..., ....., tractors, compressors, diesels, communication equipment. ..., etc to Cuba. Uzbekistan delivers agricultural machines and equipment, ... communication, ..... metals, fertilizers and other goods to these countries. The main items of import are food products, medicines, consumer goods, etc. Uzbekistan exports machines, ....., tractors in particular compressors, communication equipment, ....., refrigerators, etc to these .... The Republic of Uzbekistan has trade relations with more than 70 countries in the world.

**Exercise 5. Make up dialogues on the basis of these situations.**

1. You've been invited to a press-conference arranged to celebrate the anniversary of signing the Agreement on Friendship and Cooperation between Uzbekistan and other country. A foreign businessman happens to be sitting nearby. He wonders if you could tell him anything about the projects constructed in Uzbekistan. He's particularly interested in the development of power industry as this is his firm's direction.

2. You are holding a final discussion with the President of the firm a day before your departure. The Protocol will be initialed tomorrow. Take up a list of outstanding questions that are going to be discussed in Tashkent during the President's visit there. He invites the team to a small reception to mark the success of the mission.

3. Your customers are looking through the English and Uzbek copies of the Draft Protocol, You suddenly discover that a clause on additional amount of work to be done by your designers hasn't been deleted from the English copy as agreed the other day. Remind the customer of the arrangement and insist that the clause be deleted. Give your reasons.

**Exercise 6. Give extensive answers to these questions.**

1. For what purposes can a group of experts go on a short-term visit to a country?

2. What kind *of* formalities do they have to go through? What arrangements are made (discussions held) prior to, in the course of, and upon completion of the trip?

**Exercise 7. Translate the speeches at the conference.**

**A. Act out the meeting for the signing of the Protocol.**

On the date preceding the departure the Uzbek visiting team (head of the group, a design engineer, a chief mechanic, an economist and a Trade Representation executive) meet in the President's office for a final discussion and signing of the Protocol. The Uzbek party exchange impressions on the visit with the President of **the** company and his executives. Most of the important **issues** have been solved. Several minor points are postponed for further discussions.

**Re-enact the discussion. Speak on the success of the mission, thanking the President for the efforts made for the purpose. Indicate briefly what has been settled and what needs to be dealt with at later dates.**

**B. Act out a press-conference according to this script.**

The press-conference is based on the material *of* Units 6-12 and information picked up by students themselves.

**Subject:** « Uzbek-Indian .Cooperation»

**Place:** India. Delhi, House of Friendship

**Time:** After the Indian leader's visit to Uzbekistan

**Participants:**

- 1) the leader, an Indian official;
- 2) the Uzbek side is represented by members of the Trade Representation at the Uzbekistan Embassy in India and visiting experts;
- 3) the Indian side **is** represented by businessmen and observers of the Indian mass media;
- 4) foreign observers representing «Times», «News-week», etc.

**Procedure:**

Addressing all those present the leader declares the conference open:  
«Dear ladies and gentlemen. Dear friends.

We have invited you to take part in the press-conference on Uzbek-Indian cooperation ...»

The leader briefs all those present on the current situation in the region, gives his assessment of Uzbek-Indian cooperation, and explains the aims *of* the conference. (Business circles of India are willing to expand cooperation and are keen to know more about the possibilities to extend business contacts).



**Exercise 8. Put *if* or *when* in the blanks.**

- 1 ..... you ever visit China, go and visit the Great Wall.
- 2 ..... he goes to bed, he usually says his prayer.
3. Let us know ..... the manager arrives or not.
4. He phoned ..... he arrived in Rome.
5. ....the earthquake happened, the whole area was destroyed.
6. ....my daughter grows up, she'll take on the business.
7. .... I leave school, I'll go abroad for postgraduate studies.
8. ....you don't have free time today, visit us one day next week.
9. ....you don't come back, drop me a line.
10. .... it is windy we won't be able to go out.

**Exercise 9. Put *until*, *when*, *if* where it is appropriate.**

1. worked as an engineer in the industry ..... I was thirty five.
2. .... you feel dizzy, lie down immediately.
3. Wait here ..... further instructions are given.
4. .... I am in the football pools I'll travel all over the world.
5. .... I retire I'll write my autobiography.
6. He walked along the path ..... he saw the village cemetery.
7. His mother and father will be very worried ..... they hear from him.
8. "We'll stay ..... September 6th." he said to the receptionist.
9. .... I finish my homework I'll go to the cinema.

**Exercise 10. Fill in *ought to* or *should* in the following situations.**

1. Mother, you really ..... see the doctor.  
– Yes, perhaps I .....
2. The city council ..... do something about the smell coming from the gasworks.
3. What do you think we ..... do about our aunt's broken vase?  
– We have it mended.
4. You ..... complain to the bank manager about your salary.
5. If he is so fat and wants to keep fit he ..... eat less and take a lot of exercises.

**Exercise 11. Write down some things you used or didnt use to do in the past.**

1. When I was a teenager I used to ..... but not anymore.
2. I never used to ..... but now I like it very much.
3. When we were children we used to ..... on that mountain.
4. When I was a university student I used to ..... but now I don't.
5. I used to ..... in the evenings as a student.

### **Game with the expression “So Do I”**

*Teacher:* Supposing you want to build a house. How do you go about it?

*Misha:* You make a project first.

*Teacher:* Quite right, you think first what kind of house you want to have. And if you are going on a trip?

*Misha:* You think of a route.

*Teacher:* And when you buy a shirt... you buy a shirt your friend has bought.

*Misha:* Yes, sometimes...

*Teacher:* Your friend likes jazz.

*Misha:* And, so do I.

*Teacher:* That's it, “So do I”, Are you sure you always say “So do I” with full understanding? Let's see. Say “So do I” whenever it's reasonable, if it's against common sense, keep silent. I pick mushrooms in summer.

*Misha:* So do I.

*Teacher:* I eat mushrooms.

*Koliya:* So do I.

*Teacher:* Bears eat mushrooms too.

*Jane:* So do I.

*Teacher:* Scars sleep all winter through.

*Masfia:* So do I.

*Teacher:* Congratulations! I never knew it. Are you sleeping now? *Etc.*

**You may play the game with So am I, So did I, So shall I, I don't like it either, etc.**

### **Play game with “Who Does it?”**

*Teacher:* Once I didn't know what kind of animal came every day near my country-house. I asked a forester. Listen to the questions he asked:

Does it walk slowly?

Does it run?

Does it eat grass?

Does it eat leaves on the trees?

Does it get frightened when seeing you?

Does it come up close to people?

*Nodir:* I wanted to know what the animal could do.

*Teacher:* Yes, and soon he was able to say that it was an elk;

So you can tell one animal from another by its behaviour and way of life.

*Teacher:* Does it live in the forest?

*Nodir:* No, it doesn't.

*Teacher:* Does it live with people?

*Shohjahon:* Yes it does.

*Teacher.* Does it drink milk.

*Nodir:* No, it doesn't.

*Teacher:* does it bark?

*Shohjahon:* No, it doesn't.

*Teacher:* Does it live in people's house?

*Dildora:* No, it doesn't.

**Find the answers for the following riddles.**

1. What falls on the water and never gets wet?

2. Nobody saw it, but everybody heard it.

3. Footless and handless

It knocks at the door

And wants to be let in.

4. Water frowns at it.

Trees shake their heads at it.

Flowers bow to it.

Clouds run away from it.

5. What is without hands and without feet, without head or body, but can open a door?

6. A thousand threads, ten thousand threads,

They fall into the river

And are never seen again.

7. What is it that makes a noise in the fields and in the garden, but cannot get into the house?

8. What is it that can catch me in the garden and make me wet, but cannot reach me when I am at home?

9. I am asked to come,

I am waited for;

But I make them hide

When I come.

**Answers:**

1. A shadow. 2. The echo. 3. The wind. 4. The wind. 5. The wind. 6. Rain.  
7. Rain. 8. Rain. 9. Rain

---

---

## UNIT 2. TRAVELLING

### Lesson 1

**Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words in the box.**

company, convenient, fame, travelling, land, nowadays,  
remind, reservations, ruins, though, through, view

**Exercise 2 Discussion. Questions for the discussion.**

1. Do you think that modern life impossible without travelling?
2. What is the fastest and most convenient way of travelling?
3. Why do you like travelling?
4. What kind of travelling is very convenient for you?
5. Where do you go every summer?
6. Do you make new friends there?

**Grammar: Modal verbs**

Can, could, may and would: requests, permission, offers and invitations  
Model: Can I have ...                      Could I have ...?  
To have to, to be to, to be able, to be allowed. He has to go there

**Exercise 3. Translate the sentences paying attention to modal verbs.**

1. Could I have the salt, please?
2. Can I have these books, please?
3. Bob has to get up early as he lives far from the lyceum.
4. The bus to Samarkand is to arrive at 12 o'clock.
5. Jack needn't to get up early on Sunday.
6. I shall be able to take my test.
7. My friend was allowed to pass his exam.

**Exercise 4.** Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words in the box.

**ancient** – qadimiy - древний; старинный,  
**bicycle** – velosiped - велосипед  
**city** – (katta) shahar - город (большой город)  
**dangerous** – xavfli - опасный  
**different** – turli, har xil - различный, разный  
**explorer** - tadqiqotchil - исследователь

<b>journey</b>	- sayohat - путешествие
<b>imaginary</b>	- tasavvurdagi - воображаемый
<b>interpreter</b>	- (og'zaki) tarjimon - переводчик (устный)
<b>modern</b>	- zamonaviy - современный
<b>mountain</b>	- tog' - гора
<b>service</b>	- xizmat ko'rsatish - обслуживание
<b>ticket</b>	- billet - билет
<b>tourist</b>	- sayyoh, sayohatchi - путешественник, турист
<b>travel</b>	- sayohat - путешествие
<b>travelers</b>	- sayohatchilar - путешественники
<b>trip</b>	- sayohat, sayr, ekskursiya - путешествие; поездка, экскурсия
<b>unknown</b>	- notanish - неизвестный
<b>wealth</b>	- boylik - богатство
<b>wonderful</b>	- ajoyib, hayratlantiruvchi - замечательный, удивительный

## TRAVELLING

People began to travel ages ago. The first travellers were explorers who went on trips to find wealth, fame or something else. Their journeys were very dangerous but still people keep on going to the unknown lands. Nowadays it is not as dangerous and much more convenient. Do you want to go somewhere? Hundreds of companies are there to help you. They will take care about your tickets and make all the reservations needed. You don't speak the language of the country you go to? There are interpreters that will help you. With modern services. You can go around the world. You can choose the means of transport you like: plane, train, ship, bicycle, car, bus or you can travel on foot. Thousands of people travel every day on business or for pleasure. They can travel by plane, by ship, by railway or by road. You can see much more places of the country you are traveling through. If we are fond of traveling we see and learn all sorts of things we can never see or learn at home. Though we may read about them in books and newspapers and see pictures of them at the cinema. The best way to study geography is to travel and the best way to get to know and understand the people is to meet them in their own houses. I like travelling. And I want to smell different smells. I want to see different kinds of trees, flowers and plants. When I spend a holiday in traveling I always take a camera with me and photograph everything that interests me: the sights of a city, views of mountains, lakes, valleys; the ruins of ancient buildings. Some years later that will remind me the happy time that I had.

People are fond of travelling. If you go to the North you can see large cold seas and many beautiful lakes. In the South there are warm seas, wonderful trees and flowers. If you go to the West, you will enjoy lots of wonderful places. In the East of our country there are big woods and high mountains. When you travel, you visit different places and learn a lot of people's tradi-

tions, beautiful nature. You can travel by car, by plane, by ship, by train or on foot. I think that travelling to the imaginary countries helps me to know more about different things.

**Exercise 5. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. businessman
2. cashier
3. driver
4. pilot
5. post office
6. smell

**Exercise 6. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. Is tourism a profitable business?
2. Why?
3. How do you like to travel?
4. Do you prefer to travel by sea or by plane?
5. Do you like to travel with your friends?
6. Why do we buy tickets beforehand?
7. What is the best way to study geography?

**Exercise 7. Make up a story about travelling using the following expressions.**

ages ago	means of transport you like
went on trips	travel on foot
to find wealth	thousands of people
something else	on business
keep on	for pleasure
much more convenient	more places of the country
hundreds of companies	to be fond of
take care about	the best way
go around	a lot of people's traditions

**Exercise 8. Fill the blanks with the following prepositions: of, around, for, about, on, in, without, by, at, to.**

1. Modern life is impossible ... travelling.
2. Thousands of people travel every day either ... business or ... pleasure.
3. Of course, travelling ... air is the fastest and the most convenient way, but it is the most expensive too.
4. You can see much more places ... the country you are travelling through.
5. Speed, comfort and safety are the main advantages ... trains and planes. That is why many people prefer them to all other means.

for, about, with, around, for, in, at

### Exercise 9. Form synonymous pairs.

Ex. look at-stare

- |                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 1. obtain            | 11. start      |
| 2. to leave (school) | 12. lend       |
| 3. enter             | 13. unfamiliar |
| 4. return (home)     | 14. relaxation |
| 5. execute           | 15. observe    |
| 6. labour            | 16. beforehand |
| 7. obligation        | 17. describe   |
| 8. introductory      | 18. enjoy      |
| 9. help              | 19. empty      |
| 10. to clean         | 20. different  |

**Exercise 10.** Write down three forms of the following irregular verbs and find the irregular verbs from the text and write three forms

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. be    | 7. put    |
| 2. build | 8. set    |
| 3. do    | 9. sit    |
| 4. fly   | 10. sting |
| 5. have  | 11. tell  |
| 6. leave |           |

### Exercise 11. Form antonymous pairs.

Ex. easy-difficult

- |                     |                 |                |
|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. short            | 9. dirty        | 17. ancient    |
| 2. fast             | 10. often       | 18. deep       |
| 3. hot              | 11. midnight    | 19. best-known |
| 4. inside           | 12. fat         | 20. wrong      |
| 5. mild (character) | 13. busy        | 21. legal      |
| 6. earn (money)     | 14. bad         | 22. learned    |
| 7. foreigners       | 15. to buy      |                |
| 8. go out of        | 16. left (side) |                |

## Speaking

**Exercise 1.** Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.

**Exercise 2.** Act out dialogue between 2 students on travelling..

**Exercise 3.** Learn and act out the dialogue.

## Dialogue

1. When did people begin to travel?  
- People began to travel ages ago.

2. Who were the first travelers?

- The first travelers were explorers who went on trips to find wealth, fame or something else.

3. Who will take care about your tickets?

-Hundreds of companies are there to help you. They will take care about your tickets and make all the reservations needed.

4. Who will help if you don't speak the language of the country you go to?

-There are interpreters that will help you.

5. How can you go around the world?

- You can choose the means of transport you like: plane, train, ship, bicycle, car, bus or you can travel on foot.

6. What can you see if you go to the North?

-If you go to the North you can see large cold seas and many beautiful lakes. In the South there are warm seas, wonderful trees and flowers.

7. What can you see If you go to the West?

-If you go to the West, you will enjoy lots of wonderful places.

**Exercise 4.** Play a role of a foreigner a native citizen and discuss Traveling.

**Exercise 5.** A pair of work.

**Answer the following questions and make up a dialogue.**

A: Why is modern life impossible without travelling?

B:

A: What is the fastest and most convenient way of travelling?

B:

A: Why is travelling by sea very popular?

B:

A: Why is travelling by car very convenient?

B:

A: Where do you go every year?

B:

A: Where do you make new friends?

B:

## **Writing**

**Exercise 1.** Write down the gist of the text.

**Exercise 2.** Change the direct speech into indirect and write it down making the necessary changes.

1. Lola says, "My mother has enjoyed the film."

Lola says ... .

2. Botir said, "I shall help my father."

Botir said ... .

3. Madina said: "I have brought all my things."



Madina said ... .

4. The headmaster said: "Students, don't miss the lessons."

The headmaster told the students ... .

5. The director said to the visitor: "When did you graduate from the University?"

The director asked the visitor ... .

6. "When will you go to London, Jack?" asked Tom.

Tom asked Jack ... .

7. Mahmud asked Bob: "What did you buy yesterday?"

Mahmud asked Bob what ... .

8. Tom: "Have you seen any interesting film lately, Dan?"

Tom asked Dan ... .

9. "Do you go in for sports?" -father asked.

Father asked ... .

10. John said: "I was at home yesterday"

Jack said ... .

**Exercise 3.** Read, discuss and retell the text.

**Exercise 4.** *Read the poem*

### A RED, RED ROSE

*by Robert Burns*

O my Love's like a red, red rose

That's newly sprung in June;

O my Love's like the melodie

That's sweetly play'd in tune

As fair art thou, my bonnie lass

So deep in love am I;

And I will love thee still, my dear,

Till a the seas gang dry

Till a' the seas gane dry, my dear

And rocks melt, the sun

And I will love thee still, my dear

While the sands o' life shall run

And fare thee weel, my only Love

And fare thee weel a while

And I will come again, my Love

Tho' it were ten thousand mile

**Exercise 5. Proverbs.**

**All is not gold that glitters.**

Yaltiragan hamma narsa oltin emas.

Не всё то золото, что блестит.

**Silence is golden.**

Sukut saqlamoq oltinga teng.

Молчание – золото.

**Choose an author as you choose a friend.**

Kitob muallifini do'st tanlagandek tanla.

Выбирай книгу так, как выбираешь друга.

**Bad news has wings.**

Yomon xabarlarining qanoti bor.

Плохая молва на крыльях летит.

**Actions speak louder than words.**

So'zlardan ishlarning salmog'i baland.

О человеке судят по его делам; не по словам судят, а по делам.

**A living dogs is better than a dead lion.**

O'lik arslondan tirik it afzal.

Живая собака лучше мертвого льва.

**No fire without smoke.**

Tutunsiz olov bo'lmas (Shamol bo'lmasa, daraxtning boshi qimirlamaydi).

Нет дыма без огня

**Exercise 6. Riddle.**

He comes at night (or so they say),

Then does his job and goes away,

Who is he?

*(Santa Claus)*

**Exercise 7. Joke**

“Why are you going to marry that police captain?”

“It is against the law, you know, to resist an officer.”

**Exercise 8 Make up words using the letters from the table.**

a	n	c	i	e	n	t	a	g	o
c	j	o	u	r	n	e	y		
i	m	m	o	u	n	t	a	i	n
t	o	t	i	c	k	e	t	x	x
y	d	t	o	u	r	i	s	t	x
t	e	t	r	a	v	e	i	x	x
r	r	t	r	i	p	i	n	n	x
a	n	i	a	n	d	a	i	r	x
i	s	e	r	v	i	c	e	x	x
n	d	i	f	f	e	r	e	n	t

**Javob:** ancient, ago, city, train, journey, modern, service, different, mountain, ticket, tourist, travel, trip, inn, land, air.

## Lesson 2

### TRAVELLING BY TRAIN

**Exercise 1.** Train the pronunciation of the following words in the box

railroad notice transportation entrance exitrent couple  
mountaineering climbing travel

**Exercise 2.** Discussion. Questions for the discussion on the picture.

1. What is the convenient way of traveling for you?
2. Why many people prefer traveling by train?
3. Where do you go every year by train?
4. When did you first travel by train?
5. When did you travel by train last?

**Grammar: Complex object.**

**On entering the classroom ... .**

**When she entered the classroom,** she said: "How do you do."

**On entering the classroom** he said: "How do you do."

**Exercise 3. Underlined constructions change into gerund constructions.**

1. **When mother comes home**, she usually plays with me.(on).
2. **Before I go to the lyceum**, I always call for my brother.(before).
3. Your son can improve his English, **if he reads much**. (by)
4. **Before they leave for America**, they will you know. (before)
5. Your daughter never speaks Uzbek correctly, **if she does not learn grammar**. (without).

**Exercise 4. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words in the box.**

**advantages** – afzallik - преимущества

**arrival** – kelish, yetib kelish - прибытие

**booking office** –billet kassasi - билетная касса

**carriage** – tashish, olib borish - перевозка

**comfort** – qulaylik, qulay sharoit - комфорт, удобства

**continent** – qit'a - континент, материк

**departure** – jo'nash, jo'nab ketish - отъезд; уход

**destinations** – (sayohat) maqsadi - цель (путешествия, похода)

**disadvantages** – noqulay sharoit - неблагоприятное условие

**enjoy** – rohatlanmoq, lazzatlanmoq (nimadandir)- получать удовольствие (от чего-л.)

<b>enjoyable</b> – yoqimli, rohatбахsh- приятный, доставляющий удовольствие
<b>imagine</b> – tasavvur qilmoq - воображать, представлять себе
<b>luggage</b> – yuk - багаж
<b>picturesque</b> –chiroyli, go‘zal (manzara haqida)- живописный (о ландшафте)
<b>platform</b> – platforma – платформа
<b>prefer</b> –afzal ko‘rmoq- предпочитать
<b>railway</b> –temir yo‘l, temir yo‘li – железная дорога; железнодорожный путь
<b>refreshment</b> – kuch to‘plash, dam olish – восстановление сил; отдых
<b>rhythm</b> – ohang – ритм (в самом широком смысле - как периодичность, повторяемость)
<b>safety</b> – xavfsizlik – безопасность
<b>scene</b> – sahna, manzara, ko‘rinish – пейзаж, картина; зрелище
<b>seat</b> – o‘rindiq, joy – сиденье, место
<b>slower</b> – sekinroq, sustroq – медленнее, тише
<b>station</b> – stansiya- станция
<b>train</b> – poyezd – поезд
<b>waiting room</b> –kutish zali (vokzalda)– зал ожидания (на вокзале)

## TRAVELLING BY TRAIN

Travelling by train is slower than by plane, but it has its advantages. Comfort and safety are the main advantages of trains. That is why many people prefer train to all other means. Modern trains have very comfortable seats. There are also sleeping cars and dining cars which make even the longest journey enjoyable. If I travel by train my friends see me off at the railway station.

Millions of people all over the world spend their holidays travelling. They travel to see other countries and continents, modern cities and the ruins of ancient towns, they travel to enjoy picturesque places, or just for a change of scene, they travel on business. It is always interesting to discover new things, different ways of life, to meet different people, to try different food, to listen to different musical rhythms. People travel by train, by boat, by car, by plain. All means of travelling have their advantages and disadvantages. And people choose one according to their plans and destinations. I want to talk about travel by train. If people are short of time they usually travel by air. But if they have time they prefer to go by train. You have speed, comfort and pleasure combined with a train . From the comfortable corner seat of a carriage you have a splendid view of the country side. Let’s imagine that we are at the railway station. There are a lot of platforms at which trains come in and go out. The porters are very busy carrying luggage. There are a lot of notices in

a big railway station. You may see the Entrance and Exit. There is also a waiting room. If you are hungry or thirsty you'll go to the Refreshment room. If you don't know the number of the platform from which your train leaves look for the notices Arrivals and Departures. You can see the notice. Booking office. This where you buy tickets.

**Exercise 1. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. to lack-not to have smth.
2. train
3. station
4. porter
5. rail
6. way

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. Why is it useful travelling by train?
2. Do you prefer traveling with your classmates?
3. Where do you like to travel?
4. Do you prefer to travel by train in winter?
5. Do you usually buy tickets beforehand?

**Exercise 3. Using words and expressions**

travelling by train	modern cities
slower than	ancient towns
main advantages of trains	picturesque places
that is why	a change of scene
prefer train to all other means	travel on business
modern trains	it is always interesting to
comfortable seats	different ways of life
sleeping cars	to meet different people
dining cars	to try different food,
the longest journey	seat of a carriage
travel by train	have a splendid view of
to see smb. off	at the railway station
at the railway station.	a lot of platforms
millions of people	come in and go out
all over the world	in a big railway station
Entrance and Exit	Arrivals and Departures
a waiting room	booking office

**Exercise 4. Fill the blanks with the following prepositions: of, around, for, about, on, in, without, by, at, to.**

1. Large ships and small river boats can visit foreign countries and different places ... interest within their own country.
2. You can stop wherever you wish, and spend ... any place much time as you like.
3. Every year my friends and I go somewhere ... the South ... holidays.
4. It is also possible to rent a room or a furnished house ... for a couple of weeks there.
5. Sometimes, we can place ourselves ... a tent ... the sea shore enjoying fresh air and the sun all day long.

**Exercise 5. Form synonymous pairs.**

Ex. allow-permit

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| 1. continue   | 11. gradually  |
| 2. exactly    | 12. awfully    |
| 3. attractive | 13. constant   |
| 4. attempt    | 14. in a hurry |
| 5. difficult  | 15. to fulfill |
| 6. train      | 16. save       |
| 7. remarkable | 17. to make    |
| 8. popular    | 18. let        |
| 9. near       | 19. verify     |
| 10. aircraft  | 20. holiday    |

**Exercise 6. Write down three forms of the following irregular verbs and find irregular verbs from the text and write three form1. Beat**

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| 2. burst  | 7. ride   |
| 3. draw   | 8. sew    |
| 4. forbid | 9. sleep  |
| 5. hear   | 10. stink |
| 6. lend   | 11. think |

**Exercise 7. Form antonymous pairs.**

Ex. misfortune-prosperity

- |                |              |                    |
|----------------|--------------|--------------------|
| 1. necessary   | 8. serious   | 15. cruel          |
| 2. top         | 9. lazy      | 16. ignorant       |
| 3. dark        | 10. decrease | 17. to find        |
| 4. out of date | 11. decent   | 18. to protect     |
| 5. native      | 12. heavy    | 19. first          |
| 6. seize       | 13. host     | 20. the worst      |
| 7. beautiful   | 14. dull     | 21. mild (climate) |
|                |              | 22. remember       |

## Speaking

**Exercise 1. Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Learn and act out the dialogue.**

### Dialogue

**Exercise 3. Play a role of a foreigner a native citizen and discuss travelling.**

**Exercise 4. A pair of work.**

**Answer the following questions and make up a dialogue.**

A: Who were the first travellers?

B:

A: Were their journeys safe?

B:

A: Why did they go on trip?

B:

A: Is it more convenient to travel now?

B:

A: What kinds of transport facilities can you choose from?

B:

A: Is tourism a profitable business? Why?

B:

**Exercise 1. Write down the gist of the text.**

**Exercise 2. Change the direct speech into indirect and write it down making the necessary changes.**

1. Mary asked: "Jane, where did you buy this book?"

John asked ... .

2. Father: "We are going to have dinner."

Mother says ... .

3. Jane: "Don't forget to bring my book, Tom."

Jane asked Tom ... .

4. Tom: "Is your daughter good at English?"

Tom asked me ... .

5. Dan said, "Bob, are you busy now?"

Dan asked Bob ... .

6. Father said to his daughter, "Do not give me my pen back."

Father asked him ... .

7. Nancy said, "Where were you yesterday?"

Nancy asked ... .

8. She said, "I am not very busy today."

She said ... .

9. Jack: Write down my address.

Jack asked me ... .

10. Ann to Peter: "Have you received my letter?"

Ann asked if ... .

**Exercise 3. Read, discuss and retell the text.**

**Exercise 4. Listen to the poem and then repeat it after the speaker.**

### THOSE EVENING BELLS

*by Thomas Moore*

Those evening bells! those evening bells!  
How many a tale their music tells,  
Of youth and home and that sweet time  
When last I heard their soothing chime.

Those joyous hours are past away;  
And many a heart, that then was gay,  
Within the tomb now darkly dwells  
And hears no more those evening bells

And so 't will be when I am gone;  
That tuneful peal will still ring on  
While other bards shall walk these dells  
And sing your praise, sweet evening bells

**Exercise 5. Riddle**

What has a foot, but has no legs?

*(A mountain)*

**Exercise 6. Proverb**

**A rolling stone gathers no moss.**

Ko'chmanchi odam qo'nim topmas.

Перекаати поле.

**Rome was not built in a day.**

Shoshgan qiz erga yolchimas.

He cpaзy MoCKBa CTpoилacъ.

**All is well that ends well.**

Hamma narsa yaxshilik bilan tugasa yaxshidir.

Всё хорошо, что хорошо кончается.

**Ask no questions/and you will be told no lies.**

Savol bermasangiz yolg'on eshitmaysiz.

He задавай вопросов, и не услышишь лжи.

**To err is human.**



Xato qilmoq insonga xosdir.

Человеку свойственно ошибаться.

**Barking dogs seldom bite.**

Huradigan itning do‘qidan qo‘rqma.

Не бойся собаки, что лает.

**Exercise 7. Joke**

Friend: Have you sold anything lately?

A French Artist: Yes, I have.

Friend: What was it?

The Artist: My overcoat and my Sunday suit.

**Exercise 8. Make up words using the letters from the table**

c	o	m	f	o	r	t	s	e	e
c	o	n	t	i	n	e	n	t	f
a	r	r	i	v	a	e	x	i	t
r	e	s	-	p	a	r	t	o	i
a	n	e	m	a	i	n	o	w	e
i	j	a	m	a	n	y	r	n	n
i	o	t	p	e	o	p	i	e	d
w	y	p	i	a	n	e	x	x	a
a	e	l	a	t	f	o	r	m	l
y	i	m	a	g	i	n	e	x	e

**Javob:** comfort, continent, arrival, enjoy, seat, part, railway, platform, imagine, plane, main, many, people, see, all, or, town, friend.

---

---

## TEXTS FOR ADDITIONAL READING

### Great Silk Road

# The Silk Roads

An Educational Resource

By Morris Rossabi

*The Silk Roads, an incurably romantic subject which offers a splendid source for secondary school teachers and students alike, linked the civilizations of Eurasia for much of premodern history, starting as early as the second century B.C.E., if not earlier. China, Central Asia, West Asia, and, to a lesser extent, Europe, were placed in touch with each other via the Silk Roads. The economic significance of their contacts in pre-1500 history may have been exaggerated, but their cultural impact can hardly be overstated, and the political influences, particularly during the era of the Mongol empire, have only, of late, received much attention.*



Major themes of cultural borrowing, interactions of civilizations, and the development of new economic institutions and technologies to facilitate commerce, together with the sheer excitement of travel and adventure, can be conveyed through historical descriptions of the Silk Roads. East and West Asian civilizations that have often received short shrift in the secondary-school curriculum can be brought to life through study of the history of the Silk Roads. Even nineteenth and twentieth-century relations between Asia and Europe, when

the Silk Roads appear to have lost much of their significance, can be profitably analyzed through examination of clashes of interests along these old East-West caravan routes.

A good pedagogical device in teaching about the Silk Roads is to focus on specific individuals or occasionally composites – travelers, merchants, missionaries, adventurers, entertainers, and others – who embody the central historical themes. Teachers are blessed with a panoply of fascinating figures who played roles in the long history of the Silk Roads. More fortuitous still, quite a number either wrote accounts of their travels or were themselves the leading figures of contemporaneous histories, diaries, or biographies. Primary sources, often laced with excitement, humor, and insights, thus can constitute the core of a unit on the Silk Roads. The teacher naturally may need to select and edit these accounts to eliminate unfamiliar names of persons or places or irrelevant recital of events that might encumber or deflect the students' interest.



Growing scholarly and pedagogical concern for global history has resulted in the writing of secondary studies of great value to teachers seeking to impart educational themes related to the Silk Roads. Jerry Bentley's *Old World Encounters*, with its emphasis on cultural relations and interactions, offers compact surveys of religious and technological diffusion, while Philip Curtin's *Cross-Cultural Trade in World History* focuses on commerce, with descriptions of trade in specific commodities. S. M. Adshear's *Central Asia in World History* demonstrates the significance of that relatively unstudied region, which travelers and caravans needed to traverse, and my own "The 'Decline' of the Central Asian Caravan Trade" analyzes the essential conditions for the proper operation of the Silk Roads. In *Plagues and Peoples*, William McNeill describes the diffusion of diseases both via the Silk Roads and seaborne commerce. Though Janet Abu-Lughod's *Before European Hegemony* makes a compelling argument for the importance of the Silk Roads trade, it is marred by factual errors and must be used with care. All these works are available in paperback editions and are thus accessible to teachers who seek additional information.

## Lesson 3

### TRAVELLING BY AIR

**Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words in the box.**

comfortable quickest booking office passenger luggage  
free of charge boarding journey dangerous ticket train  
bicycle register boarding stewardess information

**Exercise 2. Discussion. Questions for the discussion on the picture.**

1. What is the fastest and most convenient way of travelling?
2. Why is travelling by air very popular?
3. Where do you go by plane every year?
4. When did you first travel by plane?
5. When did you last travel by plane?

Passive Voice

.... am (is, are) spoken.  
... has been spoken.  
.... was (were) spoken  
English is spoken all over the world.

**Exercise 3. Translate into Uzbek and pay attention to passive voice.**

1. My father will be asked about his book next week.
2. New lyceums are built in Uzbekistan every year.
3. This month a very beautiful hotel has been built in Tashkent.
4. The Remembrance Day and the Veteran's day in Uzbekistan are celebrated on the 11<sup>th</sup> of November every year.
5. Many high buildings in Uzbekistan are built very quickly now.

**Exercise 4. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words in the box.**

**airport** – aeroport – аэропорт  
**allow** – ijozat bermoq, ruxsat bermoq- позволять, разрешать  
**altitude** – balandlik - высота  
**beforehand** – oldindan - преждевременный  
**cabin**- alohida xona (kemada) -каюта (в корабле)  
**free of charge** – bepul, tekin - бесплатно, даром  
**countryside** - qishloq joy - сельская местность  
**expensive** - qimmat, qimmat turadigan - дорогой, дорогостоящий  
**fastest** – eng tez - наискорейший

**flight** – uchish, reys -полет; рейс  
**fly** – 1) uchish; 2) uchmoq -1) полет; 2)летать, пролетать  
**hike** – uzoq sayohat; ekskursiya piyoda sayr qilish-длительная прогулка; экскурсия; путешествие пешком  
**hiking** – turizm - туризм  
**hurry up** – shoshmoq, shoshilmoq - торопиться, спешить  
**on foot** – piyoda, yuov - пешком  
**passenger** – yo‘lovchi - пассажир  
**pleasant** – yoqimli - приятный  
**quickest** – eng tez - наискорейший  
**register** – (mehmonxonada) turuvchilarni yozadigan qayd daftar – книга записи постояльцев (в гостинице)  
**require** – muhtoj bo‘lmoq (nimagadir) - нуждаться (в чем-л.)  
**rucksack** – ryukzak (yuk xalta) -рюкзак, походный мешок  
**speed** – tezlik, sur‘at - скорость; темп  
**stewardess** – styuardessa - стюардесса  
**trip** – sayohat; sayr, ekskursiya - путешествие; поездка, экскурсия  
**useful** – foydali, kerakli -полезный, пригодный  
**weigh** – (tarozida) tortmoq - взвешивать  
**wish** – tilak, istak - желание

## TRAVELLING BY AIR

Of course, traveling by air is the fastest and the most convenient way, but it is the most expensive too. Speed is the main advantage planes. That is why many people prefer plane to all other means. It’s difficult to buy tickets for the plane. That’s why we buy our tickets beforehand. When I travel by plane, I don’t spend a lot of time going from one place to another. I like to fly.

If I travel by plane my friends see me off in the airport. Many people prefer travelling by air as it is the most convenient, comfortable and fastest means of travelling. If you have made up your mind to travel by plane you need to go the booking office to buy tickets beforehand. Each passenger is allowed 20 kilograms of luggage free of charge. Before boarding the plane the passenger must register at the airport. When registering the passenger is required to have his luggage weighed. Before the plane takes off the stewardess gives all the information about the flight, the speed and the altitude. Inside the cabin the air is always fresh and warm. The stewardess helps everyone get comfortable in the seats and wishes you a pleasant trip.

## TRAVELLING ON FOOT (HIKING)

Some people usually have long walks in the country. Such walks are called hikes. If we want to see countryside we have to spend a part of our summer

holidays on hikes. During such hikes we see a lot of interesting places, sometimes we meet interesting people. It's useful for all members of our family. We take our rucksacks. We don't think about tickets and there is no need to hurry up.

**Exercise 1. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. to lack- not to have smth.
2. trip
3. journey
4. seat
5. stewardess
6. beforehand

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. Is tourism a profitable business? Why?
2. Do you like to travel?
3. How do you like to travel?
4. Do you prefer to travel by sea or by plane?
5. Whom do you like to travel with?
6. Why do we buy tickets beforehand?
7. Do you like to travel?
8. What is the best way to study geography?
9. What do you do during your vacation?
10. Discuss the qualities of an ideal vacation?
11. What do you call "a good vacation?"

**Exercise 3. Make up sentences using the following expressions. Make up a story about travelling using the following expressions.**

travelling by air	travel by plane
is the fastest way	see smb. off in the airport
the most convenient way	to make up one's mind
the most expensive	to go to the booking office
prefer plane to all other means	to buy air tickets beforehand
to buy tickets for the plane	free of charge
buy tickets beforehand	at the airport
the plane takes off	to wish smb. a pleasant trip.

**Exercise 4. Fill the blanks with the following prepositions:  
of, around, for, about, on, in, without, by, at, to.**

1. In the day-time we play volleyball, tennis, swim ... the warm water ... the sea and sunbathe.
2. In the evening I like to sit ... the beach watching the sea and enjoying the sunset.

3. I am fond ... mountaineering.
4. So I do a lot ... climbing together ...with my friends.
5. We return home in the evening with full ... impressions.

**Exercise 5. Form synonymous pairs.**

Ex. famous-well-known

- |                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| 1. also          | 11. reply   |
| 2. fine          | 12. offer   |
| 3. orator        | 13. disturb |
| 4. quietly       | 14. tall    |
| 5. to recover    | 15. ill     |
| 6. to recall     | 16. like    |
| 7. cruel         | 17. talk    |
| 8. at the moment | 18. travel  |
| 9. physician     | 19. silly   |
| 10. profession   | 20. brave   |

**Exercise 6. Write down three forms of the following irregular verbs and find irregular verbs from the text and write three forms.**

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| 1. become | 7. ring    |
| 2. buy    | 8. shake   |
| 3. drink  | 9. speak   |
| 4. forget | 10. strike |
| 5. hide   | 11. throw  |
| 6. let    |            |

**Exercise 7. Form antonymous pairs.**

Ex. rude-polite

- |           |                 |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. repair | 9. damp         | 17. high (hope) |
| 2. full   | 10. tall (man)  | 18. give        |
| 3. begin  | 11. outstanding | 19. wide        |
| 4. coward | 12. public      | 20. expensive   |
| 5. noisy  | 13. cry         | 21. dry         |
| 6. punish | 14. strong      | 22. foolish     |
| 7. big    | 15. more        |                 |
| 8. end    | 16. before      |                 |

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Act out dialogue between 2 students on travelling by air.**

**Exercise 3. Learn and act out the dialogue.**

### **Dialogue**

**Exercise 4. Play a role of a foreigner a native citizen and discuss Travelling by air.**

**Exercise 5. A pair of work.**

**Answer the following questions and make up a dialogue.**

A.: Do you like to travel?

B:

A: How do you like to travel?

B:

A: Do you prefer to travel by sea or by plane?

B:

A: Whom do you like to travel with?

B:

A: Why do we buy tickets beforehand?

B:

**Exercise 1. Write down the gist of the text.**

**Exercise 2. Change the direct speech into indirect and write it down making the necessary changes.**

1. Alice: "Did you see a rabbit in the forest?"

Alice wonders ... in the forest.

2. Teacher: "Lucy, read the text, please."

Teacher asked Lucy ... .

3. She thought "What am I going to do?"

She thought... .

4. "Don't play in the garden"

-My father said to me ... .

5. "Are you a teacher?"

-He asked me ... .

6. What were you doing at 9 o'clock yesterday?

-She asked him ... .

7. Jane says "I clean my room every day".

Jane says that ... .

8. She says, "What do the pupils study?"

He asked ... .

9. She said, "I do not want to see this film".

She said that ... .

10. My brother said that. "I hope we shall go to an excursion to the lake".

My brother said that ... on an excursion to the lake.



**Exercise 3. Read, discuss and retell the text.**

**Exercise 4. Listen to the poem and then repeat it after the speaker.**

### TWILIGHT

*By George Gordon Byron*

It is the hour when from the boughs  
The nightingale's high note is heard;  
It is the hour when lovers' vows  
Seem sweet in every whisper'd word;  
And gentle winds, and wasters near,  
Make music to the lonely ear.  
Each flower the dews have lightly wet  
And in the sky stars are met  
And on the wave is deeper blue  
And on the leaf a browner hue  
And in the heaven that clear obscure  
So softly dark, and darkly pure,  
Which follows the decline of day,  
As twilight melts beneath the moon away.

**Exercise 5. Proverbs.**

**Don't cross the bridges before you come to them,**

Ko'prikka kelmasdan, uni kechib o'tma.

Не хвали кашу, коли просо не просеяно.

**All is not gold that glitters.**

Yaltiragan hamma narsa ham tilla bo'lavermaydi.

Не все то золото, что блестит.

**Second thoughts are best.**

Maslahatli to'y tarqamas.

Одна голова хорошо, а две лучше!

**Practice makes perfect.**

Ish ustasidan qo'rqadi.

Дело мастера боится!

**No news is good news,**

Yangiliklar yo'qligi – yaxshi yangilik.

Отсутствие вестей – хорошая весть.

**ART is long, life is short.**

San'at abadiy – umr qisqa.

Жизнь коротка, искусство вечно

**Exercise 6. Joke**

The champion athlete in bed with a cold was told that he had a high temperature.

“How high is it, Doctor?” he wanted to know.

“A hundred and me.”

“And what’s the world record?”

**Exercise 7. Make up words using the letters from the table.**

a	i	r	p	o	r	t	w	h	y
a	c	c	h	a	r	g	e	f	i
e	a	f	h	w	e	f	m	r	u
e	b	a	i	i	a	r	u	e	g
o	i	s	k	s	c	e	s	s	g
w	n	t	e	n	n	e	t	n	a
p	a	s	s	e	n	g	e	r	g
e	x	p	e	n	s	i	v	e	e
c	o	u	n	t	r	y	f	i	y
b	e	f	o	r	e	h	a	n	d

**Javob:** airport, allow, charge, cabin, country, beforehand, expensive, fast, fly, hike, passenger, wish, why, each, free, must, fresh, luggage.

## Lesson 4

### TRAVELLING BY SEA

**Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words.**

within, ocean, liner, combine, comfort, speed, fresh, ship, facility, cabin, seasleeping-car, voyage, pleasure, profitable, sightseeing, enjoy, hike, rucksack.

**Exercise 2. Discussion. Questions for the discussion on the picture.**

1. Why is modern life impossible without travelling?
2. What is the fastest and most convenient way of travelling?
3. Why is travelling by sea very popular?
4. Why is travelling by car very convenient?
5. Where do you go every year?
6. Where do you make new friends?
7. Who were the first travellers?
8. Were their journeys safe?
9. Why did they go on trip?
10. Is it more convenient to travel now?
11. What kinds of transport can you choose from?

## Grammar: Past Perfect

**I had written ....**

**He had done ....**

I had written a letter by 10 o'clock yesterday.

He had done his homework before his father came.

**Exercise 3. Translate the sentences into Uzbek and pay attention to Past Perfect.**

1. My mother had already left when my father came.

2. By the end of the month my son had learnt to speak English.

3. My friend had studied at the lyceum before he entered the World Languages University.

4. John had lived in England before he came to Tashkent.

**Exercise 4. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words in the box.**

**liner** – layner (yo'lovchi tashidigan katta kema) - лайнер (рейсовое судно)

**combine** – qo'shilmoq, birlashmoq - соединяться, объединять(ся)

**fresh** – yangi, toza (oldin ishlatilmagan)- свежий, чистый (не бывший в употреблении)

**sights** – diqqatga sazovor joylar - достопримечательности

**passage** – o'tiladigan (transport o'tadigan) joy, yo'l - проезд, проход

**real** – haqiqiy, chin - действительный

**floating** – suzuvchi, suzib (qolqib) yuruvchi - плавающий, плавучий

**conveniences** – maishiy qulaylik, shinamlilik - удобства, комфорт

**entertainment** – ko'ngil ochadigan, vaqtni chog' qiladigan tadbirlar a) (mehmonlarni) qabul qilish; kecki bazm, ziyofat; b) estrada konserti - развлекательное мероприятие а) прием (гостей); вечер; вечеринка б) эстрадный концерт

**facility** - qulay sharoit, imtiyoz, yengillik - благоприятные условия; льготы

**restaurant** -restoran- ресторан

**ship** – dengiz kemasi, kema - корабль; морское судно

**prefer** – afzal ko'rmoq - предпочитать

**convenient** – qulay, shinam - удобный, подходящий

**reserve** - oldindan buyurtma bermoq- заказывать заранее

**tour** - sayohat, safar, ekskursiya - путешествие, поездка, экскурсия

**ticket** –bilet, chipta- билет

**carry** –tashimoq, ko'tarib olib bormoq - нести; носить

**heavy** – og'ir, vazmin - тяжелый, тяжеловесный

**suitcase-** (kichlina va yassi) jamadon - чемодан (небольшой и плоский)  
**wherever** – qayerda bo‘lmasin, qayerga bo‘lmasin-где бы ни, куда бы ни  
**wonderful** – ajoyib, juda yaxshi - замечательный, удивительный  
**holiday-maker** – dam oluvchi; sayohatchi -отдыхающий; турист  
**rest-home** – da’volanuvchilar sanatoriyasi - санаторий для выздорав-

ЛИВАЮЩИХ

**sanatorium** – davolanish maskani(sanatoriya), kurort -санаторий, курорт  
**tourist** – sayohatchi; sayoh - путешественник, турист  
**camp** – oromgoh - лагерь  
**rent** – ijaraga olmoq - брать в аренду  
**furnished** - mebellar bilan jihozlangan - меблированный  
**couple** – juft, ikki, ikkita (bo‘lib)-пара, два, двое  
**shore** – (dengiz, ko‘l, okeanga oid ammo daryoga emas) qirg‘oq, sohil  
- берег (морья, озера, океана, но не реки); побережье  
**sunbathe** – oftobda qoraymoq - загорать  
**beach** – plyaj - пляж  
**sunset** – quyoshbibg botishi - заход солнца  
**mountaineering** – alpinizm (baland tog‘larga, tog‘ cho‘qqilariga ko‘tarilish sporti) - альпинизм  
**climbing-** (tepalikka) ko‘tarilish, chiqish - подъем, поднятие  
**impression** – taassurot - впечатление  
**seaside** – dengiz (bo‘yidagi) kurort - морской курорт

## TRAVELLING BY SEA

Some people like to travel by sea. As for them it is the most pleasant means of travelling. They prefer traveling by an ocean liner because it combines comfort and speed. You can enjoy fresh sea air, the sights of the sea and the sky. If you want to travel by sea you should book passage on board a modern liner. These liners are real floating cities with all modern conveniences and a wide choice of sport and entertainment facilities. You needn't worry about your meals on board the modern liner. Restaurants will take care of you. Travelling by sea is very popular. Large ships and small river boats can visit foreign countries and different places of interest within their own country.

## TRAVELLING BY CAR

As for me, I prefer travelling by car. I think it's very convenient. You needn't reserve tour tickets. You needn't carry heavy suitcases. You can stop wherever you wish, and spend at any place much time as you like. Every year place friend and I go somewhere to the South for holidays. The Black Sea is one of the most wonderful places which attract holiday-makers all over the world. There are many rest-homes, sanatoriums and tourist camps there. But

it is also possible to rent a room or a furnished house for a couple of weeks there. Sometimes, we can place ourselves in a tent on the sea shore enjoying fresh air and the sun all day long.

As a rule, I make new friends there. In the day-time we play volleyball, tennis, swim in the warm water of the sea and sunbathe. In the evening I like to sit on the beach watching the sea and enjoying the sunset. I am fond of mountaineering. So I do a lot of climbing together with my friends. Time passes quickly and soon we have to make our way back. We return home sun burnt and full of impressions. I like to travel by car. It's interesting too, because you can see many things in a short time. When we go by car, we don't take tickets. We put all things we need in a car. We don't carry them. Sometimes we go to the seaside for a few days. As usual the weather is warm and we can swim. It's a pleasure to watch white ships. So I can say that I enjoy all kinds of traveling very much.

**Exercise 1. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. to lack- not to have smth.
2. suitcase.
3. heavy
4. impression
5. sunset
6. sunrise

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions to the text.**

12. Is tourism a profitable business? Why?
13. Do you like to travel?
14. How do you like to travel?
15. Do you prefer to travel by sea or by plane?
16. Whom do you like to travel with?
17. Why do we buy tickets beforehand?
18. Do you like to travel?
19. What is the best way to study geography?
20. What do you do during your vacation?
21. Discuss the qualities of an ideal vacation?
22. What do you call "a good vacation?"

**Exercise 3. Make up sentences using the following expressions.**

**Make up a story about traveling using the following expressions.**

travelling by sea  
to travel by sea  
as for them  
the most pleasant  
mean of travelling

travelling by car  
it's very convenient  
to reserve tour tickets  
to carry heavy suitcases  
as you like

prefer travelling by an ocean liner	all over the world
comfort and speed	rest-homes
fresh sea air	tourist camps
the sights of the sea and the sky	a furnished house
modern conveniences	a couple of weeks
a wide choice of sport	fresh air
entertainment facilities	as a rule
take care of smb.	to be fond of mountain-
eering	
large ships	a lot of climbing
small river boats	to make our way back
places of interest	full of impressions
as for me	it's interesting

**Exercise 4. Fill the blanks with the following prepositions:  
of, around, for, about, on, in, without, by, at, to.**

1. The very first travelers were explorers who went ... trips to find wealth, fame or something else.
2. Their journeys were very dangerous but still people keep ... going to the unknown lands.
3. They will take care ... your tickets and make all the reservations needed.
4. With modern services you can go ... the world.
5. Tourism became a very profitable business because people are ready to spend their money ... the great opportunity to have a great time ... learning about new countries, going sightseeing, resting and enjoying themselves.

for, about, with, around, for, in, at
---------------------------------------

**Exercise 5. Form synonymous pairs.**

Ex. taste-try

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. holiday    | 11. go on         |
| 2. well-known | 12. begin         |
| 3. plane      | 13. enlarge       |
| 4. too        | 14. superb        |
| 5. start      | 15. tremble       |
| 6. peaceful   | 16. awful         |
| 7. fasten     | 17. phone         |
| 8. improve    | 18. approximately |
| 9. dull       | 19. knock         |
| 10. little    | 20. step in       |

**Exercise 6. Write down three forms of the following irregular verbs and find irregular verbs from the text and write three forms.**

- |            |                |
|------------|----------------|
| 1. begin   | 7. rise        |
| 2. catch   | 8. shine       |
| 3. drive   | 9. spend       |
| 4. forgive | 10. swear      |
| 5. hit     | 11. understand |
| 6. lie     |                |

**Exercise 7. Form antonymous pairs.**

be in – be out

- |              |                     |               |
|--------------|---------------------|---------------|
| 1. a lot of  | 9. easily           | 17. rudely    |
| 2. fresh     | 10. opening         | 18. much      |
| 3. religious | 11. well            | 19. lazy      |
| 4. divorced  | 12. unhappy         | 20. the truth |
| 5. future    | 13. together        | 21. laugh     |
| 6. much      | 14. a long way from | 22. friend    |
| 7. night     | 15. sharp (knife)   |               |
| 8. invisible | 16. sea             |               |

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Act out dialogue between 2 students about travelling by sea.**

**Exercise 3. Learn and act out the dialogue**

**Answer the following questions and make up a dialogue.**

A: Do you like to travel?

B:

A: What is the best way to study geography?

B:

A: What do you do during your vacation?

B:

A: Discuss the qualities of an ideal vacation?

B:

A: What do you call “a good vacation”?

B:

Exercise 4. Play a role of a foreigner a native citizen and discuss Uzbek meals.

Exercise 5. A pair of work.

**Writing**

**Exercise 1. Write down the gist of the text.**

**Exercise 2. Change the direct speech into indirect and write it down making the necessary changes.**

1. She said: "I met him in 1998".  
She said ... .
2. "How long have you been working as a teacher?"  
The principle wondered ... .
3. She asked him: "Did anybody call this morning?"  
She asked him ... .
4. Did you work at the lyceum 5 years ago?- the principle asked him.  
The principle asked him if he ... .
5. "When are you going to leave for London?"- Mary asked her.  
Mary asked her when ... to leave for London.
6. "Don't try to tell a lie!"- he said to me.  
He told me ... .
7. "Don't wait for Mary," said Jane.  
Jane told Mary ... .
8. "Will Lucy help her?" he said.  
He asked ... .
9. "I lived in Samarkand in 1995", says Alice.  
Alice says ... .
10. Peter: "When will you fly to Tashkent?"  
Peter asked me ... .

**Exercise 3. Read, discuss and retell the text.**

**Exercise 4.**

### A POEM

*By John Masefield*

One road leads to London,  
 One road runs to Wales,  
 My road leads me seawards  
 To the white dipping sails.  
 One road leads to the river  
 As it goes singing slow,  
 My road leads to shipping  
 Where the bronzed sailors go  
 My road calls me, lures me  
 West, east, south and north.  
 Most roads lead men homewards,  
 My road leads me forth.

**Exercise 5**

1. Praise a fair day at night.

**Exercise 6. Riddle.**

Use me well, and I am everybody



Scratch my back, and I am nobody.

(A mirror)

**Exercise 7. Proverbs.**

**A bad workman quarrels his tools.**

Ustaning yomoni doimo asbobidan nolir.

Плохому танцору туфли малы!

**Everything is good in its season.**

Hamma narsa o‘z vaqtida bo‘lgani yaxshi.

Всему своё время!

**A good beginning makes a good ending**

Yaxshi boshlangan ish yaxshilik bilan tugallanar.

Хорошее начало полдела откачало.

**Do at rome as the Romans do,**

Har joyning o‘z toshu-tarozisi bor.

В чужой монастырь со своим уставом не ходят.

**East or west home in best.**

O‘z uyim o‘lan to‘shagim.

В гостях хорошо, а дома лучше.

**Easy come, easy go.**

Oson keladigan narsa, oson ketadi.

Легко нажито – легко прожито.

**Exercise 8. Joke**

Patient: What, five pounds for removing my tooth? It only took you a few seconds!

Dentist: O.K. Next time I’ll make it last all day.

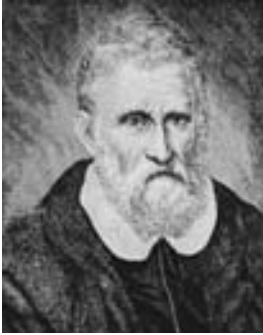
**Exercise 16. Make up words using the letters from the table.**

s	e	a	s	i	d	e	s	i	a
s	s	u	n	b	a	t	h	e	
u	b	e	h	o	r	e	c	a	r
n	e	r	c	n	e	a	v	y	l
s	a	e	a	c	a	r	r	y	i
e	c	n	m	t	o	u	r		k
t	h	t	p	s	h	i	p		e
s	a	n	a	t	o	r	i	u	m
w	o	n	d	e	r	f	u	l	
h	o	l	i	d	a	y	y	o	u

**Javob:** seaside, sun, set, sunbathe, beach, shore, rent, camp, sanatorium, wonderful, holiday, heavy, corry, tour, ship, sea, car, you, like.

## Lesson 5

### MILLION - RETURN TO EUROPE



Marko Polo and Korcula  
by dr. Zivan Filippi

Marko Polo spent seventeen years in the service of Kublai Khan. Those were the best years of his life, filled with exciting happenings, merchant business, diplomatic missions, love affairs. His father and his uncle also experienced the greatest honours and received prizes for their cleverness in trading and for their fidelity to the greatest ruler of the then world, the powerful Mongol political magician, Emperor Kublai Khan. But their life-cycle and the adult years of Marko Polo had to end in their native soil of Europe and in their homeland Venice, the powerful trading republic to which they had come from the ancient region of Dalmatia and the small Mediterranean town of Korcula.

They communicate their decision to Kublai Khan with a heavy heart. The Khan at that time was already seventy five years old. There was a great risk that the Great Khan would not release them from his service, because the Polos, and especially the young Marko, were dear to his heart. He had got used to them as extremely capable and not just ordinary persons coming from another civilization that, though it had not achieved the level of civilization of the greatest Asian country, China, from whom just the same he learned a lot. However, as always on their Odyssey through Asia, fortune smiled at them at the right moment. Bolgana, the first wife of the Persian khan Arghun wanted, before her death, a woman from her tribe in Mongolia to succeed her. Therefore, Arghun sent, in 1286, three messengers to Khanabalik asking the kindly Kublai Khan to choose a new wife for him among the beautiful Mongol girls. Kublai chose the princess Cocachin, a seventeen year old beauty. But the messengers, together with Cocachin, had to return to Khanabalik, because war broke out between the Mongol tribes en route. Marko Polo had then just returned from his successful mission in India. The Persian messengers suggested that he might help them to return to Persia by sea. Kublai Khan, although reluctantly, agreed to part company with his faithful dignitaries. He proclaimed the Polos his envoys to the Pope and the European kings and he gave them the small imperial plaque as a permit to secure them safe passage across his big empire. He ordered thirteen ships and enough food and equipment for two years of travel to be put at their disposal. Marko was amazed when he saw these big and powerful ships which were to carry them on their long journey. These were ships built with a double layer of planking, fastened with iron nails, and caulked with oakum. And since the Chinese had no pitch, the boats

were coated on the bottom with a paste of quicklime and tung oil. There were sixty cabins in the interior of the boats, and the hold of the ship was divided by bulkheads into small, watertight compartments. In case whales rammed the vessel, the crew could confine the water to one compartment only, remove the cargo from it and repair the damage. This safety measure was not introduced into European vessels until the nineteenth century. As well as the big ships there sailed tug-boats with them in case of need. There were also, on each of the big boats, several smaller ones for fishing, anchoring and other work. The captain, with a crew of three hundred people, enjoyed really royal benefits and was regarded as a divinity.

### **Exercise 1. Read and retell the text**

The convoy of the Polos, with the princess Cocachin, and with at least two thousand people, left the port of Zayton in spring 1292.

Polo interrupts his story at this point to disclose to us what he had heard about the mysterious island 1,500 miles away from the Asian continent. He calls it Chipangu (modern Japan) and speaks with admiration about its great richness. He mentions the imperial palace with the golden roof, and with floors and windows of golden plaques, and about the abundance of pink pearls which are put in the mouth of the dead before a funeral. Marko's description of the richness of Japan excited the imagination of the European discoverers of the new world - among others of Christopher Columbus, and the cartographer Toscanelli, whose map was used by Columbus, and which put Japan seven thousand miles west of Portugal. At that time, the famous European discoverers did not have the slightest idea that Japan is double that distance away from Europe, and that, between it and Europe there is a whole continent, North America. The famous Kublai Khan heard also about the richness of Japan and sent there two armies of 150,000 Mongol and Korean soldiers combined. They managed to establish a bridgehead on the island of Kyushu, but the Japanese held them there. Then a storm smashed almost the whole of Kublai's armada. From 4,000 ships only 200 of them managed to escape a terrible destiny. Marko Polo, as Kublai's loyal diplomat explains this rare defeat of his master as due to a dispute between two generals ("barons") who commanded the united forces of the Mongols and the Koreans. However, Kublai's great strength lay in horses, not in boats. Marko speaks also about a curious event which happened to the Khan's soldiers when they managed to disembark on Japanese soil and continued to make war there. When they attacked one of the towers of the defenders they killed all the warriors except eight of them whom they were unable to hurt. They had embedded under their skin gold and precious stones so that no steel could pierce them. European explorers in the nineteenth century confirmed these curious stories of Marko's. That was usual way in which Japanese soldiers tried to be invulnerable.

## **Exercise 2. Translate into your mother tongue.**

For two months the Polo's convoy was sailing from the port of Zayton to Indo-china (which Marko calls Champa). The king of Indo-china was paying annual tribute to the Great Khan of twenty elephants and much of the scented aloe wood.

Marko Polo and his escort were forced to stop in Sumatra for five months because of the southwest monsoons. As the natives were cannibals, Marko arranged a ditch filled with water round the camp on the coast and a strong guard. But, due to Marko's diplomatic skill, these cannibals became very friendly and supplied our travellers with food. Then Marko saw, for the first time in his life, "nuts as big as human head" (coconuts), and the tree which gave flour for bread and cakes (sago). Marko says that fish in Sumatra is the best in the world. Marko's escort drank palm wine after fish. They would put a cup under a cut in the palm tree and the vessel would be filled with white or red wine in a day and a half. Marko wrote that this wine is a cure for the sick spleen. When the cut branch does not give any more wine, the natives water the roots of the tree and wine starts to flow again very soon. The Malayans call this tree "gomuti" and they can also get sugar from it. Marko says that the liquid in the coconut "has a better taste than wine and than any drink that has ever existed". Marko "saw" in Sumatra the mountain tribe whose members had tails like a dog.

Marko discovered divers searching for pearls in the shallow waters near Ceylon. As there were a lot of sharks in these waters, the tradesmen of the pearl shells would protect the divers by hiring a special caste of Brahmin sorcerers who would cast a spell on the sharks while the divers were picking up the shells. However, the sorcerers would remove their spell during the night lest rival divers should appear. It seems that the sorcerers did find some means of deterrence of sharks, as this practice was exercised for centuries.

## **Exercise 3. Make up dialogues.**

Sailing towards the coasts of India, Marko Polo's convoy reached the large nearby island of Ceylon. Marko sets here the story about the life of the Indian prince Sakyamuni, who became Buddha and founded the Buddhist religion. He was the son of the king of that big and rich island, who had an inclination towards the life of the saints from his early childhood. The king tried to persuade him to take over his throne. He built for him a big palace and ordered beautiful girls to entertain him with song, dance and other worldly pleasures. However, no girl managed to lure him into the world of pleasure, so that he remained alone, shut in the palace. His father did not allow any old or sick man to approach him, so that the young man was not aware about the inevitable end

of every living being. But one day, the ill-fated prince rode to the nearby wood and saw a dead man on the road. When he asked what that thing which lay on the earth was, they told him it was a dead body. "Must all men die?" asked the prince with sorrow. He saw on the same road a toothless old man who could not walk. When he received, in this way, his first experience of the old age and death, the young prince returned to the palace and took a vow that he was going to look after That one who does not die and Who created him. Thus he reached the high mountains where he decided to live an ascetic life. If he were a Christian, Marko says, he would have become "the great saint of our Lord Jesus Christ" due to his good and pure life. When he untimely died, his body was brought in front of his father who loved him very much. The father ordered his servants to make a figure of gold and precious stones in his likeness and decreed that all had to worship it. The inhabitants of Ceylon proclaimed him the greatest of all their gods and they idolised him. Marko adds that the young prince died four times and each time he was reborn as another animal: ox, horse etc. But he was reborn as a god only after he had died eighty four times. Thus the Europeans learned from Marko's story about the noble founder of the Buddhist religion. Although a member of another Church, Marko speaks with sympathy about the young Buddha. He confirms this affection for him by emphasizing that the Great Khan sent for Buddha's relics from his tomb on the top of the mountain.

Marko shows similar benevolence towards the Indian Brahmins and yogis. He says that the Brahmins are the most honest tradesmen in the world, that they never lie and that they help foreigners to sell their goods without profit to themselves. They hate all killing and even the killing of animals. They believe very much in various signs and omens, as shades, and especially the movements of the tarantula spider. He says that yogis believe that all things have souls, and that they do not wish to kill either worm or lice. They do not use plates but they eat from dry leaves and they drink only water. They never mix with women. They sleep naked in nature without any covering and they reach a very old age.

#### **Exercise 4. Express your attitude to the text.**

Marko liked more the luxurious royal courts than the shacks of the poor. He was especially impressed by the Indian king from the Coromandel coast. The king did not wear any clothes because of the warm climate and he was always adorned with precious decorations; among other things, with a medalion of diamonds, a necklace of 104 pearls and rubies, gold bracelets on hands and legs and with rings on the fingers of both hands and legs. Five hundred women, together with many noblemen, accompanied the king wherever he went. When he died and was cremated, his subjects were throwing themselves

in the fire in order to follow him. Marko mentions also the custom of suttee when wives throw themselves on the funeral pyre after their husband.

Marko's frequent observation of the ritual of fire, as the way to achieve the divine life in heaven, speaks also about his restless, fiery temperament which incited him always to thirst after new knowledge and new adventures of both spirit and body.

Although Marko introduced India to Europe, with his accurate observations of the customs and the way of life of Indian inhabitants two centuries before Vasco de Gama - who was later celebrated as the discoverer of that "unknown" subcontinent - he could not ignore the fantastic legends extant before the time of his travels. One such story is about "the island of women" which was visited by men from their own island only in spring time. Another fable is that about the "roc" bird from Madagascar, which was so strong that it could carry three elephants. Even this fantastic story might prove to be true as was the case with other descriptions Marko's. This bird is mentioned in the "Arabian Nights" from the seventh century in the story about the sailor Sinbad.

Finally, after more than two years of toilsome but exciting travelling across the south seas, the convoy arrived in Persia. Marko does not mention at all Scylla and Charybdis through which his expedition passed, all possible storms and distresses, the attacks of various native tribes and diseases, unbearable heat, rotten food and water. He summarizes all this in one single sentence when he says that from six hundred travellers, not counting the crew, only eighteen survived the journey.

After arriving at their destination, the court of the Persian shah Arghun, the Polos learned that he had died, but his son Ghazan resolved the awkward situation and decided to marry the princess Cocachin, who had been intended for his father. The Polos rested in Persia for eight months from their tiresome travelling and there they received the news that their friend and protector, the Great Khan, had died. The man they must thank, to a great extent, for their riches and their rich life filled with exciting events. The princess Cocachin was cried while she was bidding farewell to Marko Polo, and our convoy converted itself into a caravan. The Polos arrived over land to Trebizond on the Black Sea, where they were happy to meet the familiar faces of Venetian and Korculan tradesmen. But they experienced their first setback in that first port in touch with the Christian world. Thieves stole from them a big quantity of golden coins.

From Trebizond, via Constantinople and the Aegean Sea, they finally entered their Adriatic Sea and, by that well-known trade route passed by Marko's native Korcula. That was in 1295, exactly 701 years ago.

### **Exercise 5. Retell the main idea of the text.**

When he returned to Venice Marko was forty one years old and he had seen and experienced more than any of other citizen in the medieval Europe. Nobody among their friends (who did not even recognize them) believed in their stories. But Marko conceived a cunning plan. He organized a banquet at which he invited all his friends and distant relatives. Our three travellers put on the most expensive robes of satin, silk and damask. To their visitors' amazement, the Polos took off their sumptuous clothes, left the banqueting hall and returned in the rags in which they had entered Venice, fearing that they would experience the same ill-luck as in Trebizond. Then, like the wizards from Thousand and One Night, they took off the poor rags and cut the seams with a knife. To the amazement of the incredulous Venetians, rubies, sapphires and emeralds started to fall. After that they were treated by their co-citizens with the greatest respect.

That was one more moral from Marko's entire quest for the Grail. The human desire for the unattainable breaks all obstacles. But the real pleasure is in the journey towards the shining Grail, and not in the treasure itself, which Marko attained.

---

## UNIT 3.

### HOTEL

#### Lesson 1

**Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words:**

establishment, provide, overnight, lodging, public, basic, service, restaurant, offer, entertainment, range, inns

**Exercise 2. Discussion. Questions for the discussion on the picture.**

1. When were the earliest inns established?
2. Were they private or public homes?
3. Did early inn keepers keep the room clean?
4. When did the quality of inns improve?
5. What was the first building in the United States constructed specifically as a hotel?

  
INTER CONTINENTAL  
TASHKENT





## Grammar Indirect Speech

Bob said ...  
Bob said that ...  
Bob said "My brother is at school."  
Bob said that his brother was at school.

**Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences and pay attention to the indirect speech.**

1. Mary said that her sister were ill.
2. Jack said that Tom was going to the library.
3. Tom said that Bob had bought a new camera.
4. The teacher said that he couldn't come to the party on Monday
5. Lucy wanted to go to the lyceum but she didn't know the way.

**Exercise 1. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words in the box.**

**afford** – qila olmoq, qurbi yetmoq - быть в состоянии, позволить себе  
**boston** – boston (raqsning bir turi) - (вальс-) бостон.

**business** – biznes (savdo-sotiq bilan shug'ullanish) - бизнес, коммерческая деятельность.

**construct** – qurmoq, barpo etmoq - строить, сооружать; воздвигать .

**crude** – ishlov berilmagan, tozalanmagan -необработанный, неочищенный.

**development** – rivojlanish, o'sish - развитие, расширение, развертывание, рост;

**especially** – ayniqsa, birinchi navbatda -особенно, в особенности, главным образом

**establish** – mustahkamlamoq, mahkamlamoq - укреплять, делать твердым

**European** – yevropacha - европейский

**expand** – kengaymoq, keng tarqalmoq - растягивать(ся), расширять(ся)

**feature** – o'ziga xos xususiyat, fazilat -особенность, характерная черта

**full-length** – boshdan – oyoq, to'liq ravishda - во всю длину, в полный рост

**highway** – katta yo'l - большая дорога

**hotel** – mehmonxona - гостиница

**however** – qanday bo'lmasin - как бы ни

**include** – o'z ichiga olmoq - включать в себя

**increase** – o'sish - возрастание

**indoor** – uy ichidagi, ichki - домашний, комнатный

**inexpensive** – arzon, qimmat emas- дешевый, недорогой

**innkeeper** – mehmonxona egasi - хозяин гостиницы

**inn-** kichik mehmonxona - жилье; гостиница

<b>leader</b>	– yo'l ko'rsatuvchi, yo'l boshchi – проводник, гид
<b>lobby</b>	– vestibyul; qabulxona, foye – вестибюль; приемная; фойе
<b>lock</b>	– qulf – замок
<b>lodging</b>	– turar joy, uy-joy – жилище, жилье
<b>mirror</b>	– ko'zgu – зеркало
<b>motel</b>	–motel (mehmonxona turi) – мотель
<b>offer</b>	– taklif qilmoq; taklif kiritmoq -предлагать; делать предложение
<b>operator</b>	– operator – оператор
<b>owner</b>	– xo'jayin, ega, sohib – владелец; собственник, хозяин
<b>period</b>	– vaqt, davr – период; промежуток времени
<b>pleasure</b>	– huzur-halovat – удовольствие
<b>plumbing</b>	– slesarluik ishi – слесарные работы
<b>private</b>	– xususiy, shaxsiy – частный, собственный
<b>provide</b>	– ta'minlamoq – обеспечивать
<b>quality</b>	– sifat – качество

## HOTEL I

The earliest inns were established about 3000 B.C. Most of them were private homes whose owners provided rooms for travellers. Many early innkeepers did not keep the room clean, and they provided only crude meals for their guests. Several travelers usually had to share the same room and sometimes even the same bed. The quality of inns, especially of those in England, improved during the A.D. 1700's, when more people began to travel for pleasure.

The first building in the United States constructed specifically as a hotel was the City Hotel, which opened in New York City in 1794. During the 1800's, American innkeepers became the leaders in hotel development. At that time, only the wealthy could afford to stay at European hotels. In the United States, however, many hotels offered comfortable, inexpensive lodgings.

Early hotels had many beds, no lock on room doors, and no lobbies. Guests usually entered a hotel through a bar. In 1829, the Tremont House in Boston became the first hotel provide private rooms with locks. The Tremont also was the first hotel to have a lobby and to offer indoor plumbing.

Hotels expanded their services in the early 1900's. During that period, Ellsworth M. Statler, an American hotel operator, opened that included many new features. For example, Statler's hotels provided private baths and full-length mirrors in each room.

Hotels have long been built near transportation centers. In the 1800's and early 1900's, when most people traveled by train, many hotels stood near railway stations. A great increase in automobile travel during the 1940's and 1950's led to the development of motels, many of which stand near major highways. Today, because many business people travel by airplane, many new are built in city centers and near airport.

**Exercise 1. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. same
2. several
3. share
4. specifically
5. transportation
6. wealthy

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. Who became the leader in hotel development during the 1800's?
2. What had early hotels?
3. What house in Boston in 1829 became the first hotel provide private rooms which locks?
4. What was the first hotel to have a lobby and to offer indoor plumbing?
5. When did hotels expend their services?

**Exercise 3. Make up sentences using the active words.**

the earliest inns	at that time
most of the hotels	to offer comfortable
private homes	inexpensive lodgings
to provide rooms	no lock on room doors
room for travelers	no lobbies
many early innkeepers	through a bar
did not keep the room clean	the first hotel
meals for the guests	to have a lobby
several travelers	to offer indoor plumbing
the same room	hotel operator
the same bed	provide private baths
the quality of inns	provide full-length mirrors
to travel for pleasure	in each room
the first building	transportation centers
to construct specifically	in automobile
as a hotel	the development of motels
to become the leaders	to build in city centers
in hotel development	

**Exercise 4. Supply the appropriate prepositions chosen from those at the end of exercise.**

1. Hotel is an establishment that provides overnight lodging ... the public.
2. It's basic service is providing a room to sleep ... .
3. Many hotels offer rooms and services ... meetings, and some have shops and offer entertainment.

4. Hotels in North America employ about one staff member ... every two rooms.
5. The hotel staff works ... the clock to make the guests comfortable.
6. Bellhops carry luggage and packages ... the guests rooms.
7. Some hotel restaurants provide room service, ... which guests can have food and beverages brought to their rooms. In certain hotels, guests also can have clothing laundered by the hotel's valet service.
8. Motels differ ... hotels in that they are designed specifically to serve automobile travellers.

from, to, by, for, around, in, for, for

**Exercise 5. Form synonymous pairs.**

Ex. friendly-cordial

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. boring     | 11. flatter       |
| 2. brave      | 12. to go to bed  |
| 3. treasure   | 13. contain       |
| 4. explorer   | 14. ask           |
| 5. unpaid     | 15. sincere       |
| 6. hardly     | 16. disturb       |
| 7. discovery  | 17. give a hand   |
| 8. importance | 18. well-known    |
| 9. huge       | 19. investigation |
| 10. bard      | 20. celebrate     |

**Exercise 6. Write down three forms of the following irregular verbs and find irregular verbs from the text and write three forms.**

- |         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. bet  | 7. say    |
| 2. come | 8. show   |
| 3. fall | 9. spread |
| 4. get  | 10. swim  |
| 5. hurt | 11. wear  |
| 6. lose |           |

**Exercise 7. Form antonymous pairs.**

Ex. small(hope)-high

- |              |               |                  |
|--------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. take      | 9. liar       | 17. severe       |
| 2. after     | 10. near      | 18. the best     |
| 3. weak      | 11. town      | 19. last         |
| 4. whispered | 12. encourage | 20. to accuse    |
| 5. private   | 13. brave     | 21. intellectual |
| 6. ordinary  | 14. empty     | 22. funny        |

7. coward

15. break

8. cruel

16. daughter

### Speaking

**Exercise 1. Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Act out dialogue between 2 students about hotel.**

**Exercise 3. Learn and act out the dialogue**

### Dialogue

**Exercise 4. Play a role of a foreigner a native citizen and discuss hotel.**

### Dialogue

**Exercise 1. Write down the gist of the text.**

**Exercise 2. Change the direct speech into indirect and write it down making the necessary changes.**

**Exercise 3**

## DARKNESS

*by George Gordon Byron*

I had a dream, which was not all a dream  
The bright sun was extinguished, and the stars  
Did wander darkling in the eternal space  
Ray less, and pathless, and the icy earth  
Swung blind and blackening in the moonless air;  
Morn came and went and came, and brought no day,  
And men forgot their passions in the dread  
Of this their desolation; and all hearts  
Were this their desolation; and all hearts  
Were chilled into a selfish prayer for light;  
And they did live by watch fires-and the thrones,  
The palaces of crowned Kings-the huts... .

\* \* \*

The rivers, lakes, and ocean all stood still,  
And nothing stirred within their silent depths;  
Ships sailor less lay rotting on the sea,  
And their masts fell down piecemeal; as they dropped  
They slept on the abyss without a surge  
The waves were dead; the tides were in their grave,  
The Moon, their mistress, had expired before;

The winds were withered in the stagnant air  
 And the clouds perished; Darkness had no need  
 Of aid from them-She was the Universe.

**Exercise 4. Read the following proverbs and learn them by heart.**

**1. To build castles in the air.**

Havoda qasr qurmoq.

Строить воздушные замки.

**2. Easy come, easy go.**

Oson kelsa, oson ketadi.

Легко нажито, легко и прожито.

**3. Ask no questions and you will be told no lies.**

Savol berma, yolg'on eshitmaysan.

И правильные слова без дела трепать не к чему.

**4. Promise little, but do much.**

Va'dani kamaytir, ishni ko'paytir.

Кто словом скор, тот в деле не спор.

**5. A good wife makes a good husband,**

Erni er qiladigan хотин.

С доброй женой и муж честен.

**6. He laughs best who laughs last,**

Mag'zini chaqqan oxirida kuladi.

Хорошо смеётся тот, кто смеётся последним.

**Exercise 5. Joke**

“What would your wife say if you bought a new car?”

“Look out for that traffic-light! Be careful now! Don't hit that truck! Why don't you watch where you're going? Will you never learn?” and a lot more like that.

**Exercise 6. Make up words using the letters from the table.**

b	u	s	i	n	e	s	s	+	+
c	o	n	s	t	r	u	c	t	+
e	s	p	e	c	i	a	l	l	y
b	e	s	t	a	b	l	i	s	h
a	g	h	i	n	c	l	u	d	e
th	u	o	i	n	d	o	o	r	*
f	e	t	l	o	b	b	y	*	*
u	s	e	l	o	d	g	i	n	g
l	t	l	l	o	c	k	*	*	*
l	h	i	g	h	w	a	y	*	*

**Answers:** business, construct, especially, bath, establish, full, guest, highway, hotel, include, indoor, lodging, lock.

## Lesson 2

### HOTEL II

#### Warming up

#### Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words:

basic, beverage, establishment, operation, package,  
room, service, specifically, staff, theft, valet.

#### Exercise 2. Discussion. Questions for the discussion on the picture.

1. What is hotel?
2. Do hotels offer rooms and services for meetings?
3. Do hotels range in size from large buildings?
4. Do many hotels offer the range of services provided by the large establishments?
5. Why does the hotel staff work around the clock?

#### Grammar: Future Continuous

Shall be doing ...  
Will be doing ...  
I shall be reading a book at 9 o'clock next week.  
You will be working at 10 o'clock tomorrow.

#### Exercise 3. Translate the following sentences and pay attention to the Future Continuous Tense.

1. Don't phone me at 8 o'clock tomorrow. We shall be having breakfast at 8 o'clock tomorrow.
2. Bob can't come next week on Monday because he will be giving a lesson at the lyceum at that time.
3. We shall be playing all day tomorrow.
4. They will be reading in the library from 4 till 6.
5. My friends will be working the whole evening.

#### Exercise 4. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words:

**bellhop** – xat-xabar eltuvchi (mehmonxonada) - коридорный или посыльный ( в гостинице, отеле)  
**certain** – aniq, ma'lum - точный, определенный  
**clothing** – ust-bosh, kiyim - одежда, платье

**conditioning** – qulay sharoit yaratish-создание соответствующих условий (для чего-л.)

**consist** – tashkil topmoq – заключаться (in - в чем-л.)

**cost** – baho, narx – цена, стоимость (тж. перен.)

**daily** – har kungi, kundalik - ежедневный; повседневный

**department** – bo‘lim, qism - отдел, отделение

**designed** – loyiha asosida qilingan - соответствующий плану, проекту и т. п. ; выполненный по плану, проекту

**differ**–farqlamoq–отличать (from - от кого-л., чего-л.; in - в чем-л.)

**directly** – to‘g‘ridan-to‘g‘ri, bevosita - прямо, в прямом направлении

**disturbances** – to‘polon, tartibsizlik - волнения, беспорядки

**electricity** – elektr nuri – электричество

**employ** – vazifa, belgilangan maqsad - назначение, цель

**generally** – odatda – обычно, как правило

**heat** – issiq, issiqlik, harorat - жара, жар, тепло

**housekeeping** – uy-ro‘zg‘or ishlari - домашнее хозяйство

**however** – qanday bo‘lmasin – как бы ни

**include** – o‘z ichiga olmoq - включать в себя

**inns** – yashash joyi, uy - жилье, дом

**laundered** – yuvilgan - стиранный

**lobby** – vastibyul, qabulxona, fayl - вестибюль; приемная; фойе

**multistory** – ko‘p qavatli - многоэтажный

**occupy** – (xonani) egallab olmoq; ijaraga olmoq - занимать (дом, квартиру); арендовать

**offer** – taklif - предложение

**order** – jamiyat tabaqalari, ijtimoiy guruh - слой общества, социальная группа.

**overnight** – tun arafasida bo‘ladigan - происходивший накануне вечером

**parking** – avtomobillar to‘xtash joyi - место стоянки автомобилей

**prevent** – oldini olmoq, oldindan ehtiyot chorasini ko‘rmoq - предотвращать, предупреждать.

**providing** – tayyor, tayyorlangan, tayyor holatda - готовый, подготовленный; в состоянии готовности.

## HOTEL II

Hotel is an establishment that provides overnight lodging for the public. It's basic service is providing a room to sleep in. But most hotels also have at least one restaurant. Many hotels offer rooms and services for meetings, and some have shops and offer entertainment.



Hotels range in size from large buildings with more than 3,000 rooms to small inns that have as few as 8 to 10 rooms. Small hotels do not offer the range of services provided by the large establishments. However, rooms and meals at most small inns generally cost less than those at large hotels.

Hotels in North America employ about one staff member for every two rooms. The hotel staff works around the clock to make the guests comfortable. The housekeeping staff cleans each room daily. Bellhops carry luggage and packages to the guests rooms. The engineering department keeps the hotel's electricity, plumbing, heat, and air conditioning in good working order. The hotel security department works to prevent fire, theft, and other disturbances.

Some hotel restaurants provide room service, by which guests can have food and beverages brought to their rooms. In certain hotels, guests also can have clothing laundered by the hotel's valet service.

Motels differ from hotels in that they are designed specifically to serve automobile travelers. Most hotels occupy one multistory building that has a central lobby on the main floor. Guests reach their rooms through the lobby. Motels may consist of one or more buildings and always include a parking lot. Guests can enter their rooms directly from the lot. Many lodging operations offer both full hotel services and parking.

**Exercise 1. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. range
2. security
3. service
4. specifically
5. theft
6. valet

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. What does the housekeeping staff do?
2. What do bellhops do?
3. What does the engineering department do?
4. What is the hotel security department's duty?
5. What do guests do at the hotel restaurants?

**Exercise 3. Make up sentences using the following expressions.**

a central lobby	small hotels
about one staff member	small inns
at most small inns	the engineering department
basic service	through the lobby
bring to guests rooms	to cleans each room daily
carry luggage and packages	to have a restaurant
consist of one or more buildings	to have as few as 8 to 10 rooms

directly from the lot  
 for every two rooms  
 for the public  
 from large buildings  
 have shops  
 hotel security department  
 Hotels range  
 include a parking lot  
 lodging operations  
 most hotels  
 multistory building  
 offer entertainment  
 offer full hotel services  
 on the main floor  
 providing a room  
 rooms and meals

to keep the hotel's air conditioning  
 to keep the hotel's electricity in order  
 to keep the hotel's heat in order  
 to keep the hotel's plumbing in order  
 to make the guests comfortable  
 to offer room  
 to offer services  
 to offer the range of services  
 provide by the large establishments  
 to provides overnight lodging  
 to serve automobile travelers  
 to sleep in  
 to work around the clock  
 to work to prevent fire  
 with more than 3,000 rooms

**Exercise 4. Supply the appropriate prepositions chosen from those at the end of exercise.**

1. Most hotels occupy one multistory building that has a central lobby ... the main floor.
2. Motels may consist ... one or more buildings and always include a parking lot.
3. Guests can enter their rooms directly ... the lot.
4. There are three chief kinds ... hotels: commercial hotels, resort hotels, and residential hotels.
5. Most commercial hotels are near the airport or the downtown ... large or medium sized cities.
6. These hotels serve mainly business travelers and other people ... short trips. Many commercial hotels provide luxurious surroundings and a wide range of services.
7. The guest in most commercial hotels have a choice ... restaurant, ranging from coffee shops to elegant dining rooms.
8. Some ... these restaurants offer music, dancing, and other entertainment.

on, from, of, on, of, of, of, of
----------------------------------

**Exercise 5. Form synonymous pairs.**

Example: payment-wages

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| 1. enough   | 11. true     |
| 2. astonish | 12. elevator |

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| 3. awkwardly  | 13. effort  |
| 4. substitute | 14. seize   |
| 5. devote     | 15. last    |
| 6. require    | 16. gloomy  |
| 7. accustom   | 17. give    |
| 8. compose    | 18. imagine |
| 9. omit       | 19. hid     |
| 10. submit    | 20. glance  |

**Exercise 6. Write down three forms of the following regular and irregular verbs**

- |         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. Bite | 7. See    |
| 2. Cost | 8. Shrink |
| 3. Feed | 9. Spring |
| 4. Give | 10. Swing |
| 5. Keep | 11. win   |
| 6. Make |           |

**Exercise 7. Form antonymous pairs.**

Ex. poverty-wealth

- |               |                  |              |
|---------------|------------------|--------------|
| 1. dislike    | 9. noisy         | 17. blunt    |
| 2. come       | 10. enemy        | 18. slowly   |
| 3. aversion   | 11. lie          | 19. less     |
| 4. shortening | 12. dull (knife) | 20. to lose  |
| 5. please     | 13. bury         | 21. to stand |
| 6. lively     | 14. dry          | 22. happy    |
| 7. push       | 15. politely     |              |
| 8. borrow     | 16. land         |              |

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Act out dialogue between 2 students about hotel.**

**Exercise 3. Learn and act out the dialogue**

**Dialogue**

**Exercise 1. Play a role of a foreigner a native citizen and discuss hotel.**

**Exercise 2. Write down the gist of the text.**

**Exercise 3. Change the direct speech into indirect and write it down making the necessary changes.**

**Exercise 4. Dialogue. Read, discuss and retell the text.**

**Exercise 5. Read and translate the poem using the dictionary.**

## THE INVADERS

*by A.A.Milne*

In careless patches through the wood  
The clumps of yellow primrose stood,  
And sheets of white anemones,  
Like driven snow against the trees,  
Had covered up the violet,  
But left the bluebell bluer yet.  
Along the narrow carpet ride,  
With primroses on either side,  
Between their shadows and the sun,  
The cows came slowly, one by one,  
Breathing the early morning air  
And leaving it still sweeter there.  
And, one by one, intent upon  
Their purposes, they followed on  
In ordered silence...and were gone

But all the little wood was still,  
As if it waited so, until  
Some blackbird on an outpost yew,  
Watching the slow procession through,  
Lifted his yellow beak at last  
To whistle that the line had passed...  
Then all the wood began to sing  
Its morning anthem to the spring

### **Exercise 6. Learn the proverbs by heart.**

#### **1. One swallow does not make a summer.**

Yolg'iz otning changi chiqmas.

Одна ласточка еще не делает весны.

#### **2. To kill two birds with one stone,**

Bir o'q bilan ikki quyonni ovlamoq.

Убить двух зайцев одним ударом.

#### **3. As you make your bed, so must you lie on it.**

Nar kim ekkani o'radi.

Как постелишь, так и поспишь.

#### **4. Dogs lie, let sleeping.**

Yopig'li qozon yopig'li qolsin.

Не буди лиха, пока тихо.

**5. A big fish in a little pond.**

Qancha harakat qilsang ham befoйда.

Как пышка не дуйся-больше пирога не будешь

**6. Never judge from appearances.**

Odam olasi ichida.

Внешность обманчива.

**Exercise 7. Riddles**

How can you drive a car over water?

*(By crossing a bridge)*

What has hands that cannot hold anything?

*(A needle)*

**Exercise 8. Joke**

“I hear you are marrying again! But your wife passed away only three weeks ago!”

“I know, but I am not one who holds a grudge long.”

**Exercise 9. Make up words using the letters from the table.**

b	c	e	r	t	a	i	n	+	s
e	c	d	i	r	e	c	t	+	i
l	o	d	i	f	f	e	r	+	z
l	s	p	r	e	v	e	n	t	e
h	t	s	e	c	u	r	i	t	y
o	s	e	r	v	i	c	e	t	s
p	c	o	n	s	i	s	t	w	o
e	l	e	c	t	r	i	c	o	m
d	i	f	f	e	r	e	n	t	e
d	e	p	a	r	t	m	e	n	t

**Answers:** bellhop, certain, cost, differ, direct, different, consist, service, security, prevent, some, size, two.

**Lesson 3**

**KINDS OF HOTELS**

**Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words in the box.**

chief, choice, citizen, coffee, commercial, downtown, elegant, events, gambling, gift
--

## Exercise 2 Discussion. Questions for the discussion.

1. What are differences between motels and hotels?
2. What kind of hotels do you know?
3. What do you know about commercial hotels?
4. What do you know about resort hotels?
5. What do you know about residential hotels?

## Grammar: Plural and uncountable nouns with and without articles

**flowers/the flowers**

**music/ the music**

**My sister loves flowers.** (*in general*, not a particular group of flowers)

**I like my friends garden. The flowers are beautiful.**

**My father prefers classical music to jazz.**

**The performance wasn't very good but my son liked the music.**

## Exercise 1. Translate the following sentences and pay attention to plural and uncountable nouns with and without articles.

1. Do you like Uzbek food?
2. My daughter's favourite subject at school is physical training.
3. My son likes to collect stamps.
4. My wife took the children to the cinema.
5. All the students in the class respect Tom.

## Exercise 2. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words in the box.

**activities** – ish, faoliyat - деятельность, активность

**ad** – e'lon, reklama - объявление, реклама

**alley** – tor ko'cha, xiyobon - узкая улица, аллея

**attract** – (diqqat e'tiborini) o'ziga tortmoq, jalb qilmoq.привлекать,

притягивать

**banquet** – banket (rasmiy ziyofat) банкет

**barbershop** – sartaroshxona – парикмахерская

**bowling** – kegli o'yini - игра в кегли

**casinos** – qimorxona - казино

**golf** – golf- гольф

**health** – sog'lik - здоровье

**indoor** – uy ichida bo'ladigan - находящийся/происходящий в

помещении

**kitchenettes** – kichkina oshxona - небольшая кухня.

**lodge** – mehmonxona - гостиница

**luxurious** – serhasham, hashamatli, dabdabali - богатый, пышный, роскошный

**maid** – qizbola - девушка  
**medium** – vosita - средство  
**nearby** – yaqinida joylashgan - близкий (ближний)  
**offer** – taklif - предложение  
**operate** – ishlamoq, harakat qilmoq - работать; действовать  
**outdoor** – binodan tashqarida - находящийся или совершающийся вне

помещения

**payment** – to'lov - плата  
**pool** – hovuz - прудок  
**price** – narx- цена  
**rent resemble** – o'xshamoq-походить  
**residential** – odamlar yashaydigan (shahardagi tuman haqida) - жилой

(о районе города)

**retirement** – istefoga chiqish - отставка  
**salons** – salon - салон  
**seasonal** – mavsumiy - сезонный  
**senior** – mansabdor - вышестоящий  
**snacks** – yengil ovqat – легкая закуска  
**spas** – mineral suvli kurortlar – курорт с минеральными водами.  
**specialize** – ixtisoslashtirmoq - специализироваться  
**stores** – do'kon, magazine - арсенал; цейхгауз  
**surroundings** – tevarak-atrofdagi joylar – окрестности  
**swimming** – suzish - плавание  
**tropical** – tropik - тропический  
**valet** – xizmatkor-слуга  
**wide** – keng – широкий

## KINDS OF HOTELS

There are three chief kinds of hotels: (1) commercial hotels, (2) resort hotels, and (3) residential hotels.

*Commercial hotels.* Most commercial hotels are near the airport or the downtown of large or medium sized cities. These hotels serve mainly business travelers and other people on short trips. Many commercial hotels provide luxurious surroundings and a wide range of services.

The guest in most commercial hotels have a choice of restaurant, Ranging from coffee shops to elegant dining rooms. Some of these restaurants offer music, dancing, and other entertainment. Shops in commercial hotels include clothing stores, gift shops, and newsstands. Some hotels have barber shops and beauty salons, and many have swimming pools and health spas. Most commercial hotels have a *European plan* of payment, which covers only the price of a room.

Many commercial hotels have large rooms that their guests and other groups can use for banquets, conventions, and meetings. The hotel's catering department provides meals and snacks for such events.

**Resort hotels** feature golf, skiing, swimming, and other outdoor activities that attract vacationers. The guests at these establishments stay for a period ranging from a weekend to several weeks. Most resort hotels are near lakes, mountains, or oceans. But many stand within easy reach of large cities and serve as vacation spots for nearby residents. Some operate in conjunction with gambling casinos.

Business is seasonal at most resort hotels. During the winter months, for example, large numbers of people travel to seaside and mountain resorts in tropical areas or go to ski lodges. Many resort hotels use the *American plan* of payment, which covers lodging and meals.

Resort hotels also provide indoor activities for their guests. Many have bowling alleys, game rooms, and indoor swimming pools and tennis courts. Some resort hotels feature dancing, music, and other entertainment.

**Residential hotels** rent one or more rooms to guests for long periods of time. These hotels resemble apartment buildings but also offer meals and maid valet service. Some residential hotels have small apartments with kitchenettes. Residential hotels called *retirement hotels* specialize in lodgings for senior citizens. Retirement hotels offer medical care as well as regular hotel services.

**Exercise 1. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. trip
2. vacationers -
3. newsstands
4. resort hotels
5. conventions -
6. dining rooms

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. When were the earliest inns established?
2. Did many early innkeepers keep the room clean?
3. What can you say about the quality of inns?
4. When did the first building in the United States construct?
5. Who became the leaders in hotel development during the 1800's?

**Exercise 3. Consult a dictionary and find their translations**

a choice of restaurant	large rooms
a wide range of services	luxurious surroundings
apartments with kitchenettes	maid valet service
as well as regular hotel services	medium sized cities



at most resort hotels	mountain resorts
barber shops	near the airport
beauty salons	numbers of people
bowling alleys	offer medical care
business travelers	on short trips
catering department	outdoor activities
chief kinds of hotels	provide meals
clothing stores	provide nacks
coffee shops	rent one or more rooms
commercial hotels	resemble apartment build-
ings	
elegant dining rooms	residential hotels
European plan of payment	resort hotels
feature dancing	retirement hotels
for long periods of time	serve as vacation spots
for nearby resident	swimming pools
for senior citizens	tennis courts
gambling casinos.	downtown of large cities
game rooms	the price of a room
gift shops	to attract vacationers
go to ski lodges	to offer dancing
health spas	to offer entertainment
in tropical areas	to offer music
indoor activities	travel to seaside
indoor swimming pools	use for conventions
use for ad meetings	use for banquets

**Exercise 4. Supply the appropriate prepositions chosen from those at the end of exercise.**

1. Shops ... commercial hotels include clothing stores, gift shops, and newsstands.

2. Most commercial hotels have a *European plan* of payment, which covers only the price ... a room.

3. Many commercial hotels have large rooms that their guests and other groups can use ... banquets, conventions and meetings.

4. The hotel's catering department provides meals and snacks ... such events.

5. Most resort hotels are near lakes, mountains, or oceans. But many stand within easy reach of large cities and serve as vacation spots ... nearby resident.

6. Some operate in conjunction ... gambling casinos.

7. Business is seasonal ... most resort hotels.

8. During the winter months, for example, large numbers of people travel ... seaside and mountain resorts in tropical areas or go to ski lodges.

for	with	for	in	at	of	for	to
-----	------	-----	----	----	----	-----	----

**Exercise 5. Find synonymous pairs.**

Ex. fetch-bring

- |               |                 |              |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. grateful   | 8. depict       | 15. maritime |
| 2. upright    | 9. destiny      | 16. careless |
| 3. in advance | 10. annual      | 17. assign   |
| 4. gift       | 11. invade      | 18. astonish |
| 5. approach   | 12. wealth      | 19. treat    |
| 6. exhausted  | 13. target      | 20. steady   |
| 7. post       | 14. observation |              |

**Exercise 6. Write down three forms of the following irregular verbs and find irregular verbs from the text and write three forms.**

- |         |           |
|---------|-----------|
| 1. blow | 7. seek   |
| 2. cut  | 8. shut   |
| 3. feel | 9. stand  |
| 4. go   | 10. take  |
| 5. know | 11. write |
| 6. mean |           |

**Exercise 7. Form antonymous pairs.**

Ex. inspire-depress

- |                   |                    |               |
|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|
| 1. allow          | 9. melt            | 17. identical |
| 2. simple         | 10. peace          | 18. low       |
| 3. dark skin      | 11. not far        | 19. exclude   |
| 4. to recall      | 12. elder (sister) | 20. relax     |
| 5. slum           | 13. take off       | 21. sunrise   |
| 6. hard-working   | 14. palace         | 22. rude      |
| 7. right (answer) | 15. unimportant    |               |
| 8. out of danger  | 16. to be sure     |               |

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Act out dialogue between 2 students.**

**Exercise 3. Learn and act out the dialogue**

**Dialogue**

**Exercise 4. Play a role of a foreigner a native citizen and discuss Hotel.**

**Exercise 1. Write down the gist of the text.**

**Exercise 2. Change the direct speech into indirect and write it down making the necessary changes.**

**Exercise 3. Read, discuss and retell the text.**

**Exercise 4. Read and translate the poem using the dictionary.**

### **PASSAGE OF THE APENNINES**

*by Percy Bysshe Shelley*

Listen, listen, Mary mine,  
To the whisper of the Apennine,  
It burst on the roof like the thunder's roar,  
Or line the sea on a northern shore,  
Heard in its raging ebb and flow  
By the captives pent in the cave below  
The Apennine in the light of day  
Is a mighty mountain dim and gray,  
Which between the earth and sky doth lay;  
But when night comes, a chaos dread  
On the dim star light then is spread.  
And the Apennine walks abroad with the storm.

**Exercise 5. Learn the proverbs by heart.**

**1. The last drop makes the cup run over.**

So'nggi qatra qadahdagi suvni toshirar.

Вода камень точит.

**2. Like mother like daughter.**

Onasini ko'rib, qiziga uylan.

Первую дочь бери – по отцу, по матери, а вторую – по сестре.

**3. Experience is the mother of wisdom**

Ko'pni ko'rgan, ko'p narsa biladi.

Жизненный опыт-основа мудрости.

**4. Once bitten, twice shy.**

Sutga og'zi kuylan, qatiqni puflab ichadi.

Обжегшись на молоке, будешь дуть и на воду.

**5. Coat according to the cloth.**

Ko'rgannga qarab oyoq uzat.

По одежке протягивай ножки.

**6. Friend in need is a friend indeed.**

Do'st boshinga kulfat tushganda sinaladi.

Друзья познаются в беде.

**Exercise 6. Riddles.**

1. What has teeth that cannot bite?

*(A watch)*

2. Why is the letter “K” like a rest?

(Because it comes at the end of work)

### Exercise 7. Joke

Says Jack: “What made you go into the army, Tom?”

“Well,” replied Tom, “I had no wife, and I loved war.” What made you join the army, Jack?

“Well,” he replied, “I had a wife, and I loved peace, so I went to the war.”

### Exercise 8. Make up words using the letters from the table.

a	c	t	i	v	i	t	i	e	s
a	b	c	a	s	i	n	o	+	+
e	a	c	n	i	e	t	+	+	+
e	n	c	i	t	i	z	e	n	+
e	q	d	o	w	n	t	o	w	n
y	u	g	i	f	t	g	o	l	f
+	e	l	v	e	n	t	s	+	+
+	t	e	l	e	g	a	n	t	+
c	o	m	m	e	r	c	i	a	l
b	e	r	b	e	r	s	h	o	p

**Answers:** activities, alley, banquet, baber, shop, casino, chief, citizen, downtown, elegant, events, gift, golf.

## Lesson 4

### HOTELS IN GREAT BRITAIN

#### Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words in the box

oak, arrival, checked, in, comprise, crafted, discount, en-suite, hidden, location, overlooks, pex, pile.

#### Grammar: Adjective and adverbs (Superlative)

The longest ...

The most enjoyable ...

What is the longest river in Uzbekistan?

Last year spent my holiday in Chimgan. It was the most enjoyable holiday I've ever had.

**Exercise 2. Translate the following sentences and pay attention to the adjectives and adverbs in superlative degree.**

1. Last Sunday was **the coldest** day of the month.
2. There is a cinema in our village. It is **the oldest** building in the village.
3. My **eldest** daughter is a student at the lyceum.
4. Yesterday I bought an English book. It was **the most interesting** book I have ever read.
5. Last week my friend draw a picture of his mother. It was **the most beautiful** picture He had ever drawn.

**Exercise 3. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words:**

**adjacent** – yonma-yon joylashgan - расположенный рядом

**apartment** – xona - комната

**atmosphere** – sharoit - атмосфера

**availability** – yaroqlilik, foydalilik - годность, полезность

**booking** – buyurtma - заказ

**boutique** – ayollar kiyimlarini sotadigan kichkina do‘koncha - модный магазин.

**budget** – byudjet - бюджет; финансовая смета

**card** – tashrif qog‘ozi – визитная карточка

**charges** – chiqimlar - расходы

**chic** – hasham, zebolik, go‘zallik - шик, изящество, элегантность

**clad** – chim yotqizilgan - плакированный

**combination** – birikish, qo‘shilish - соединение, сочетание

**combine** – birlashtirmoq - соединять

**convenience** – keraklilik – пригодность

**create** – yaratmoq - производить

**deluxe** – qimmat - дорогой

**detail** – tafsilot, ikir-chikir, mayda-chuyda - подробность; деталь, тонкость

**efficiently** – oqilona, aql bilan, to‘g‘ri - рационально; разумно

**emblematic** – ramziy - символический

**emphasis** – ifodalalik - выразительность

**exclusive** – inkor etuvchi - исключаящий

**exquisite** – olifta, bashing, o‘ziga bino qo‘ygan - денди, фронт, самодовольный хлыщ

**facade** – fasad (binoning old tomoni) - фасад (здания)

**furniture** – mebel, uy jihozlari - мебель, обстановка

**guaranteed** – kafolatlangan - гарантированный

**hip** – yon tomon - бок

**hospitality** – mehmondo‘stlik - гостеприимство

**hypnotic** – uxlatadigan - снотворный  
**impeccable** – dog‘ tushmagan, benuqson - безгрешный, непорочный  
**interior** – (nimaningdir) ichqi qismi - внутренняя часть (чего-л.)  
**landscape** – manzara - пейзаж  
**majestic** – hashamatli, dabdabali - величественный, грандиозный,  
 величавый  
**marble** – marmartosh (material sifatida) - мрамор (как материал)  
**minibar** – kichik bar - минибар  
**nightlife** – (shahrning) tungi hayoti - ночная жизнь (города)  
**oasis** – voha - оазис  
**occasion** – imkoniyat - возможность  
**prestigious** – nufuzli - престижный  
**rates** – mahalliy soliq - местный налог  
**reflecting** – oynadek silliq - зеркальный  
**relax** – mushaklarni bo‘shashtirmoq, dam olmoq - ослаблять,  
 расслаблять  
**remodelled** – qayta ta‘mirlamoq - реконструировать  
**require** – buyurmoq, talab qilmoq - приказывать, требовать  
**roof** – tom, uy - крыша, кровля  
**sample** – namuna - образец, образчик  
**straight** – to‘g‘ri - прямой  
**stucco** – suvoqqa oid – отделочный, штукатурный гипс  
**studio** – studiya - студия  
**superbly** – dabdaba bilan, hasham bilan - роскошно, великолепно  
**superior** – yuqori turadigan - находящийся выше  
**throughout** – orqali - через  
**townhouse** – shahrdagi uy - городской дом  
**tranquil** – tinch, osoyishta - спокойный, уравновешенный  
**ultimate** – eng uzoq - самый отдаленный  
**unbeatable** – yengilmas - непобедимый  
**undetected** – qo‘l yetmaydigan, ochilmagan - необнаруженный,  
 неоткрытый  
**unique** – tengsiz – единственный

## LONDON HOTELS

London hotels with guaranteed discounts. Hotels London offers live availability and reviews by independent hotel critics Harrison Brown and Colin Exton. Hotels include budget to luxury, boutique, hip and hypnotic hotels. The best London locations including Soho, Bloomsbury, Mayfair, Kensington, Paddington, Bays water, London City, The Strand and many more. Pay when you stay - not when you book. Credit card required for guarantee only. Free

booking service - No hidden charges! Book online or call Customer Services on +44(0) 8707 544 447.

The Mandeville, London - by hotel critic Harrison brown.

Un-be-known to The Mandeville, I booked in there undetected in order to sample their hospitality for myself. Bookings for this new hotel have gone through the roof and I wanted to know why. On arrival we were quickly and efficiently checked in, and then went straight to the room.

### **The Rockwell - New Addition!!**

The Rockwell is an independent hotel with an emphasis on understated contemporary style, impeccable levels of personal service and attention to detail. Each room has been crafted to create a relaxed atmosphere, whilst retaining an individual character which combines English tradition with contemporary styling.

### **De Vere Cavendish**

Set in St James's, one of the most prestigious locations in the heart of London, the De Vere Cavendish offers the ultimate in luxury and convenience for visitors visiting the U.K's capital on business or pleasure.

### **Apex City of London Hotel**

pex City of London Hotel is the latest opening within the square mile and offers the last word in luxury, style and comfort. The 130 contemporary ensuite rooms are superbly appointed and offer a choice of city, superior and deluxe rooms as well as luxury junior suites.

### **St Martins Lane Hotel**

St Martins Lane is the hippest of hip hotels. The urban chic combination of Ian Schrager and Phillipe Starck has been a hit with those looking to bring a bit of New York minimalism closer to home.

### **base2stay, London Hotel**

base2stay is central London's latest serviced studio apartment hotel and is situated next to a beautiful garden square. It has been interior designed from a classic white stucco townhouse and mews, providing guests with fantastic air-conditioned rooms with excellent facilities.

### **196 Bishopsgate Apartments**

Each of the 48 apartments at 196 Bishopsgate is decorated to the same high standard and has been furnished with a contemporary flare! All offer fully equipped kitchens, marble clad en-suite bathrooms and separate dining areas.

### **Holiday Inn London Kensington**

The Holiday Inn Kensington is located in the heart of London, in the Royal Borough of Kensington and Chelsea. The hotel has its own private landscaped garden providing a quiet, tranquil, relaxing atmosphere and is unique among London hotels in its variety of bars and restaurants.

### **Caesar Hotel**

The Caesar comprises a group of 19th-century buildings and overlooks Queens Gardens, a very quiet and emblematic garden square near to Hyde

Park. It has recently been remodelled, and now, behind its Victorian facade, is a style that is totally modern with design touches reflecting the 21st-century.

### **Hotel Russell, London**

Hotel Russell is superbly located in the heart of Bloomsbury, with the British Museum, Covent Garden and Oxford Street within comfortable walking distance. This majestic historical hotel is adjacent to the Underground and close to all major train stations and airports.

### **Discount London Hotels - Best offers**

Whether you are looking to relax after a meeting, spend time with that special someone or just enjoy the coming hot London nights, Hotels London offers hotels to suit every occasion. We believe in having great choice and great rates throughout the year! Many exclusive unbeatable offers for Hotels London guests!

### **Royal Lancaster Hotel**

To stay at The Royal Lancaster is to enjoy the ultimate in relaxation. With beautiful oak furniture, deep pile carpets and exquisite marble bathrooms, bedrooms offer every luxury, including minibar and satellite television.

### **Swissotel The Howard**

Swissotel The Howard, London enjoys one of the best hotel locations in London, set in a quiet oasis just off the Embankment and overlooking the river Thames. Swissotel The Howard is just a short walk from Covent Garden with its theatres, restaurants, nightlife and shopping.

### **Exercise 1. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

- |           |            |                 |
|-----------|------------|-----------------|
| 1. urban  | 3. suites  | 5. contemporary |
| 2. whilst | 4. reviews | 6. luxury       |

### **Exercise 2. Consult a dictionary and make up sentences using the following expressions.**

- |                            |                                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| a beautiful garden square  | high standard                         |
| a choice of city, superior | hip and hypnotic hotels               |
| a classic white stucco     | historical hotel                      |
| a contemporary flare       | impeccable levels of personal service |
| a short walk from          | in a quiet oasis                      |
| a very quiet               | in the heart of London                |
| air-conditioned rooms      | independent hotel                     |
| an emphasis on smth.       | most prestigious locations            |
| an individual character    | on arrival                            |
| apartment hotel            | overlooking the river                 |
| attention to detail        | private landscaped garden             |
| beautiful oak furniture    | relaxing atmosphere                   |
| book online                | sample hospitality for smb.           |



budget to luxury  
 check in efficiently  
 check in quickly  
 chic combination  
 contemporary en-suite rooms  
 contemporary style  
 deep pile carpets  
 deluxe rooms  
 equipped kitchens  
 exquisite marble bathrooms  
 free booking service  
 great choice  
 great rates  
 guaranteed discounts  
 hidden charges

square mile and offers  
 style and comfort  
 the best hotel locations  
 the last word in luxury  
 the latest opening  
 through the roof  
 throughout the year  
 to create a relaxed atmosphere  
 to live availability  
 townhouse and mews  
 variety of bars  
 walking distance  
 whilst retaining  
 with excellent facilities

**Exercise 3. Supply the appropriate prepositions chosen from those at the end of exercise.**

1. Many resort hotels use the *American plan* ... payment, which covers lodging and meals.
2. Resort hotels also provide indoor activities ... their guests.
3. **Residential hotels** rent one or more rooms ... guests for long periods of time.
4. Residential hotels called *retirement hotels* specialize in lodgings ... senior citizens.
5. The earliest inns were established ... 3000 B.C.
6. Most of them were private homes whose owners provided rooms ... travelers.
7. Many early innkeepers did not keep the room clean, and they provided only crude meals ... their guests.
8. The quality of inns, especially of those in England, improved during the A.D. 1700's, when more people began to travel ... pleasure.

about, for, for, to, for, for, of, for

**Exercise 4. Form antonymous pairs.**

Ex. instantly-immediately

- |                |               |                |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. arrogant    | 8. dumb       | 15. feeling    |
| 2. regard      | 9. give up    | 16. coarse     |
| 3. by plane    | 10. admire    | 17. clumsy     |
| 4. at once     | 11. cheat     | 18. fix        |
| 5. participate | 12. wonderful | 19. look after |

- |            |           |          |
|------------|-----------|----------|
| 6. suppose | 13. enjoy | 20. send |
| 7. unusual | 14. brave |          |

**Exercise 5. Write down three forms of the following irregular verbs and find irregular verbs from the text and write three forms.**

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| 1. break | 6. meet   |
| 2. deal  | 7. sell   |
| 3. fight | 8. sing   |
| 4. grow  | 9. steal  |
| 5. lay   | 10. teach |

**Exercise 6. Form antonymous pairs.**

Ex. conflict-concord

- |                    |                     |                   |
|--------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. gain            | 9. to be idle       | 17. red           |
| 2. most            | 10. recently        | 18. modern        |
| 3. disappear       | 11. to save (money) | 19. significantly |
| 4. sweet           | 12. in the past     | 20. unfair        |
| 5. entrance (exam) | 13. death           | 21. reveal        |
| 6. dangerous       | 14. let             | 22. confidence    |
| 7. asleep          | 15. permanent       |                   |
| 8. sincere         | 16. abandon         |                   |

### Speaking

**Exercise 1. Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Act out dialogue between 2 students on Hotel in London.**

**Exercise 3. Learn and act out the dialogue**

### Dialogue

**Exercise 1. Write down the gist of the text.**

**Exercise 2. Change the direct speech into indirect and write it down making the necessary changes.**

**Exercise 3. Read, discuss and retell the text.**

**Exercise 4. Read and translate the poem using the dictionary.**

### GOOD NIGHT

*by Percy Bysshe Shelley*

Good night? Ah! No; the hour is ill  
Which severs those it should unite;  
Let us remain together still,  
Then it will be good night.

How can I call the lone night good,  
Though thy sweet wishes wing its flight?

Be is not said, thought, understood-  
Then it will be good night.

To hearts which near each other move  
From evening close to morning light,  
The night is good, because, my love;  
They never say good night.

**Exercise 5. Learn the following proverbs by heart.**

**1. After death the doctor is away.**

O'lgandan keyin tabib chaqirmoq.

Как мертвому припарки.

**2. Money is a good servant, but a bad master.**

Pul yaxshi xizmatkor, ammo yomon xo'jayin.

И барину денег господин.

**3. Crying over split milk, it is no use.**

Befoyda narsaga achinmoqning foydasi yo'q.

Которая корова умерла, та и к молоку была добра.

**4. Good health is above wealth.**

Yaxshi sog'lik boylikdan afzal.

Здоровье дороже богатства.

**5. Knowledge is power.**

Bilim-kuch. Знание-сила.

**Exercise 6. Joke.**

Son: "Daddy, why ladies are not called up for military service?"

Father: "Because the army needs discipline."

**Exercise 7. Make up words using the letters from the table.**

a	d	j	a	c	e	n	t	+	f
a	b	b	c	a	r	d	+	+	a
p	o	u	c	r	r	o	o	f	c
a	o	d	h	e	l	i	v	e	a
r	k	g	e	l	h	o	m	e	d
t	i	e	c	a	b	e	s	t	e
m	n	t	k	x	r	a	t	e	s
e	g	s	u	p	e	r	b	l	y
n	t	o	w	n	h	o	u	s	e
t	u	n	t	i	q	u	e	+	+

**Answers:**

Adjacent, apartment, booking, budget, card, check, untique, townhouse, superfly, roof, rates, fazade, live, home, best, relax.

## Lesson 5

### HOTELS IN UZBEKISTAN

Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words in the box.

Internet, port, ballroom, bathroom, french, bed, lightings, satellite TV, seminar, senior, suite, unveil, venues, international, flip, engage, business, meeting.

Exercise 2. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the words:

**accommodate** – moslashmoq - приспособлять(ся)

**accompanied** – hamroh - сопровождаемый

**advantages** – yutuq va kamchiliklar - преимущества и недостатки

**aerobics** – aerobika - аэробика

**air-conditioning** – havo haroratini bir xilda saqlash - кондиционирование воздуха

**anniversary** – yillik (yubiley, marosim) - годовщина; юбилей

**aqua** – suv, suyuqlik - вода; раствор; жидкость

**armchairs** – kreslo - кресло

**channels** – kanallar - каналы

**chart** – grafik, jadval - график, таблица

**overhead** – yuqoridagi - верхний

**cocktail** – kokteyl - коктейль

**conduct** – boshqarma, boshqaruv - руководство, управление

**conferences** – konferensiya - конференция

**dedicate** – bag'ishlamoq - посвящать

**deluxe** – dabdabali, hashamatli, serhasham - пышный, роскошный,

шикарный

**deposit** – deposit, qo'shilgan ulush - deposit, qo'shilgan ulush - депозит,

вклад

**depth** – chuqurlik - глубина

**downtown** – shaharning pastki qismi - нижняя часть города

**dryer** – quritadigan - абсорбент

**ensure** – kafolat bermoq - гарантировать, обеспечивать

**equipment** – abob-uskuna, jihoz - оборудование; оснащение

**experience** – (hayotiy) tajriba - (жизненный) опыт

**four-star** – to'rt yulduzli - четырехзвездочный

**graduation** – oliy o'quv yurtini (universitet yoki institutni) tugatish - окончание учебного заведения (университета или института)

**ideal** – eng yuksak namuna - идеал, образец  
**internationally** – xalqaro andozada - на международном уровне  
**junior** – kichik (mansabli odamlar uchun) - младший ( для не высоких людей)  
**kitchen** – oshxona - кухня  
**length** – uzunlik - длина  
**locally** – aniq bir joyda - местно, локально  
**locate** – joyini aniqlamoq - определять место  
**microphone** – mikrofon - микрофон  
**cordless** – simsiz - беспроводный  
**presidential** – prezidentlar uchun mo‘ljallangan - президентский  
**pride** – iftixor - гордость  
**projector** – proyektor - прожектор  
**slide** – sirpanish - скольжение  
**reception** – qabul - прием  
**repute** – abro‘ (e‘tibor) - репутация  
**Safe** – xavfsiz - безопасный  
**silk** – ipak - шелк  
**sofa bed** – divan-karovat - диван-кровать  
**sound** – tovush; shovqin - звук; шум  
**stage** – taxtasura, minbar - подмостки, помост  
**standard** – qolip - стандарт  
**suite** – majmua, to‘plam - комплект, набор

Hotel “Dedeman Silk Road Tashkent”

Hotel “Dedeman Silk Road Tashkent”, new four-stars hotel was unveiled on May 2003. It is located in downtown of the capital of Uzbekistan, at a short distance from the International Airport.

*Hotel has 206 comfortable rooms.*

Standard room

Mini-bar, Satellite TV – 25 channels, Central heating and air-conditioning, 24-hour Room Service, Safe – deposit box, Hair dryer, Direct telephone and Internet port.

Deluxe room

French Bed, Mini-bar, Satellite TV – 25 channels, Central heating and air-conditioning, 24-hour Room Service, Safe – deposit box, Hair dryer, Direct telephone and Internet port.

Junior Suite

2 rooms, French Bed, Mini-bar, Satellite TV – 25 channels, Central heating and air-conditioning, 24-hour Room Service, Safe – deposit box, Hair dryer, Direct telephone and Internet port.

### Senior Suite

2 rooms, French Bed, 2 bathrooms, 2 armchairs, 1 sofa bed, 2 Mini-bars, 2 TV sets with satellite TV (25 channels), Central heating and air-conditioning, 24-hour Room Service, Safe – deposit box, Hair dryer, Direct telephone and Internet port.

### Presidential Suite

4 rooms, Kitchen, French Bed, Additional bathroom in the bedroom, Guest bathroom, Mini-bar, Satellite TV – 25 channels, Central heating and air-conditioning, 24-hour Room Service, Safe – deposit box, Hair dryer, Direct telephone and Internet port.

The Hotel “Dedeman Silk Road Tashkent” welcomes you for your most special events with good standards in the capital city of the Republic of Uzbekistan. Since the opening, the hotel has taken pride in the ability to offer very good service to their guests. Being well reputed both locally and internationally the dedicated team of professionals ensures that each dining experience will be one to remember and one you hope to repeat.

Silk Road Ballroom and other dining rooms as Samarkand, Khiva and Bukhara Halls situated in the Hotel offer a wide variety of venues and styles, which accompanied with state of art sound and lightings. Silk Road Ballroom can accommodate 350 guest dinner style or 400 guests cocktail reception for your parties as engage and weddings, yearly end dinners, anniversaries, birthday parties, graduation ball etc.

Also you can have your party at our Turkuaz Restaurant, at Gourmet Cafe O’pera or Pasha Night Club.

These comfortable halls are equipped with all modern facilities and are ideal for conducting conferences, seminars and business meetings.

### Technical Equipment:

- Raised head table
- Flip chart
- Overhead projector
- Slide projector
- Video
- Mobile Sound System
- Mobile Screen
- Hand-free microphone
- Cordless microphone
- Table microphone • Stage

Life Style’s pool with its 18 meters length and 1.5 meters depth is rather special: it is made for real swimming. Aqua Aerobics brings together advantages of aerobics and swimming giving you an opportunity for safe and effective water exercise classes. This is supported by music to enhance the experience.

**Exercise 3. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| 1. system    | 4. video    |
| 2. screen    | 5. mobile   |
| 3. technical | 6. weddings |

**Exercise 4. Paraphrase the following word-combinations using the active words.**

24-hour Room Service	graduation ball
a wide variety of venues	Pasha Night Club
Additional bathroom	comfortable halls
advantages of aerobics	Guest bathroom
all modern facilities	hair dryer
at a short distance from	ideal for conducting conferences
birthday parties	Internet port.
Central heating	Junior Suite
cocktail reception	Life Style's pool
comfortable rooms.	locally and internationally
Dedeman Silk Road Tashkent	Mini-bar
deluxe room	most special events
direct telephone and Internet port.	Presidential Suite
downtown of the capital of Uzbekistan	rather special
effective water exercise classes	Safe – deposit box
equipped with	Satellite TV – 25 channels
four-star hotel	seminars and business meetings
French Bed	Standard room
team of professionals	Mobile Screen
Technical Equipment	Hand-free microphone
Raised head table	Cordless microphone
Flip chart	Table microphone
Overhead projector	the International Airport.
Slide projector	to enhance the experience
Mobile Sound System	

**Exercise 5. Supply the appropriate prepositions chosen from those at the end of exercise.**

1. The first building ... the United States constructed specifically as a hotel was the City Hotel, which opened in New York City in 1794.
2. During the 1800's, American innkeepers became the leaders ... hotel development.
3. At that time, only the wealthy could afford ... stay at European hotels.
4. ... the United States, however, many hotels offered comfortable, unexpensive lodgings.

5. In 1829, the Tremont House in Boston became the first hotel provide private rooms ... locks.

6. The Tremont also was the first hotel ... have a lobby and to offer indoor plumbing.

7. Hotels expanded their services ... the early 1900's.

During that period, Ellsworth M. Statler, an American hotel operator, opened that included many new features. For example, Statler's hotels provided private baths and full-length mirrors ... each room.

8. Today, because many business people travel ... airplane, many new are built in the city centers and near airport.

by, in, in, to, with, in, to, in, in

### Exercise 6. Form synonymous pairs.

Ex. cackle-snap

- |                |                 |                          |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. impertinent | 8. marvelous    | 15. fearless             |
| 2. apprehend   | 9. cheat        | 16. study (the document) |
| 3. peculiar    | 10. achievement | 17. combine              |
| 4. injure      | 11. very tired  | 18. reply                |
| 5. strange     | 12. sufficient  | 19. tap                  |
| 6. sentiment   | 13. bother      | 20. terrible             |
| 7. insistent   | 14. scientist   |                          |

### Exercise 7. Write down three forms of the following irregular verbs and find irregular verbs from the text and write three forms.

- |          |          |
|----------|----------|
| 1. bring | 6. pay   |
| 2. dig   | 7. send  |
| 3. find  | 8. sink  |
| 4. hang  | 9. stick |
| 5. lead  | 10. tear |

### Exercise 8. Form antonymous pairs.

Ex. to gorge-entertain

- |                  |                |                |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. smart         | 8. extinct     | 15. entrance   |
| 2. share         | 9. waste money | 16. increase   |
| 3. few people    | 10. collect    | 17. remember   |
| 4. turn up       | 11. honour     | 18. illuminate |
| 5. inside        | 12. freedom    | 19. separate   |
| 6. frequent trip | 13. educated   | 20. to buy     |
| 7. conserve      | 14. approve    | 21. refuse     |
|                  |                | 22. conquer    |



## Speaking

**Exercise 1.** Give a summary of the text using active words and expressions.

**Exercise 2.** Act out dialogue between 2 students on cooking and about Hotels in Uzbekistan.

**Exercise 3.** Write down the gist of the text.

**Exercise 4.** Dialogue. Read, discuss and retell the text.

**Exercise 5.** Translate the poem using the dictionary.

### THE DAFFODILS

*by William Wordsworth*

I wandered lonely as a cloud  
That floats on high o'er vales and hills,  
When all at once I saw a crowd,  
A host of golden daffodils,  
Beside the lake beneath the trees,  
Fluttering and dancing in the breeze.

Continuous as the stars that shine  
And twinkle on the Milky Way,  
They stretched in never-ending line  
Along the margin of a bay:  
Ten thousand saw I at a glance  
Tossing their heads in sprightly dance.

The waves beside them danced, but they  
Out-did the sparkling waves in glee;  
A poet could not but be gay  
In gazed-and gazed-but little thought  
What wealth the show to me had brought;

For oft, when on my couch I lie  
In vacant or in pensive mood,  
They flash upon that inward eye  
Which is the bliss of solitude;  
And then heart with pleasure fills,  
And dances with the daffodils.

### **Exercise 6. Proverbs**

**Love me, love my dog.**

Meni sevsang, itimni ham sev.

Любишь меня, так люби и собачку мою.

**A new broom sweeps clean.**

Yangi supurgi toza supuradi.

Новая метла чисто метет.

**Two heads are better than one.**

Ikkita bosh bittasidan afzal.

Одна голова хорошо, а две лучше.

**An apple a day keeps the doctor away.**

Nar kuni bittadan olma yegan odam sira tabibga uchramas.

Кто яблоко в день съедает, у того доктор не бывает.

**Measure thrice before you cut once.**

Yetti o'lachab bir kes.

Семь раз отмерь, один раз отрежь.

**If you want a thing done, do it yourself.**

Yaxshi qilingan narsani xohlasang, o'zing qil.

Глаз-алмаз.

**Exercise 7.**

**Riddles (Puzzle)**

1. What has a neck but no throat?

*(A bottle)*

2. When is the only time that a ship is not on water?

*(When it is on fire)*

**Exercise 8. Joke**

The postal clerk weighed Tom's letter and said: "It's too heavy. You'll have to put another stamp on it."

"What?" cried Tom, "and make it even heavier."

**Exercise 9. Make up words using the letters from the table.**

a	c	c	o	m	p	a	n	y	+
a	i	a	r	m	c	h	a	i	r
e	n	b	a	t	h	r	o	o	m
r	t	c	h	a	n	n	e	l	f
o	e	c	h	a	r	t	+	+	l
b	r	c	o	n	d	u	c	t	i
i	n	c	o	c	t	a	i	l	p
c	e	o	v	e	r	h	e	a	d
s	t	a	q	u	a	s	i	l	k
a	d	v	a	n	t	a	g	e	+

**Answers:**

Accompany, advantage, aerobics, aqua, bathroom, channel, chart, cocktail, conduct, silk, flip.

---

---

## UNIT 4.

### MEALS

#### Lesson 1

#### ENGLISH MEALS



Ploughman's lunch



Roast beef, potatoes



Fish and chips

#### Exercise 1. Drill the pronunciation of the following words.

1. pickles – [pɪklz]
2. Brussels sprouts – [br selz spraut]
3. roll – [roul]
4. gravy - [greɪvi]
5. cheese – [tʃi:z]
6. ploughman – [pləʊmæn]
7. dairy – [deəri]
8. brunch – [brʌntʃ]

Roast beef, Brussels sprouts, potatoes, green ploughman  
beans, gravy, pickle brunch, fish, chips, dairy cheese, a  
bread roll

#### Exercise 2. Describe the pictures using words:

1. What do you see in the first picture?
2. To what product does cheese belong? What other dairy products do you know?
3. Describe the second picture.
4. When do the people eat such meal?
5. Do you like such meal?
6. What can you see in the third picture?

7. Do you like fish? Chips?
8. When do Englishmen eat cheese?
9. What are the Brussels sprouts? Do you know them?
10. What are pickles?

### The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

I/We/They/you have been doing  
It/She/He has

It is raining now. It began to rain two hours ago and it is still raining.

It has been raining for two hours  
It has been raining since afternoon  
How long has it been raining?

The Present Perfect Continuous is used to show the action which began in the past and is still happening or has just stopped.

#### Exercise 1. Read the situation and then write a sentence with the Present Perfect Continuous (I have been doing)

E.g. Nick is out of breath. (he/run) He has been running.

1. Kate is very tired/She/work/hard/
2. Isu a little boy. His eyes are red and watery./He/cry/
3. Janet is hot and tired/She/play/tennis

#### Exercise 2. Say how long something has been happening.

E.g. He is learning English. He began learning English three years ago. He has been learning English for three years.

1. Ann is looking for a job. She began looking six months ago.  
\_\_\_\_\_ for six months.
2. Mary is working in the office. She began working there on 18 January.  
\_\_\_\_\_ since 18 January.
3. My son smokes. He began smoking five years ago.  
\_\_\_\_\_ for five years.
4. I'm learning Spanish. I started learning Spanish in 2004.  
\_\_\_\_\_ since 2004.

#### Exercise 3. Ask questions with *how long*

E.g. It is raining. How long has it been raining?

1. My foot is hurting. How long \_\_\_\_\_ hurting?
2. Mike plays chess. How \_\_\_\_\_?
3. My friend writes books \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Tom is living in High street. \_\_\_\_\_.

## Common idea about “what do you think about British food?”

Many visitors to Britain do not have a clear idea about British food; may be because there are not many British restaurants in other parts of the world. You may think that British people eat greasy food (like fish and chips or a fried breakfast) every day. You may be offered a cooked breakfast every day if you stay in a hotel or “Bed and Breakfast”, but this is not normal life. Most British people only eat these foods occasionally. (Perhaps once a week, or less often) Britain is a dairy country, so milk, butter, cheese and cream are used more than in some countries.

Perhaps you have already stayed in the U.K. and found the food boring or not tasty. This could be because you haven’t tasted good home cooking or the food in high quality restaurants. There is a very wide variety of food.

As well as the traditional British food there are also Chinese, Indian, Spanish, Italian, Turkish, Japanese dishes and so on. Ingredients are brought from many parts of the world and it’s possible to buy them in specialized shops and in ordinary supermarkets.

British farmers have had some problems in recent years due to the spread of BSE (Mad cow disease) within cattle in the 1990s, and then foot – and – mouth disease within sheep in 2001. These diseases caused many animals to be killed, and led to the introduction of new controls. Scientists believe that the new controls put in places will prevent passing the disease to humans. Foot – and – mouth in sheep is not passed on to humans by eating lamb, and since 2001 there have only been a few cases of diseases in sheep. So is it safe to eat British meat? Most British people continue to eat it, and the controls in the UK are now some of the tightest in the world.

There are many shops and restaurants selling vegetarian and organic food if you prefer to eat this.

## Grammar

Modal verb **may** and modal words **may be, perhaps, probably, possibly, evidently** Exercisepress supposition and possibility.

May, may be - are used to Exercisepress possibility in affirmative sentences.

Probably - is used in supposition referring to the future.

Evidently – Exercisepress supposition in negative sentences.

Possibly – is used in interrogative and negative sentences.

Perhaps – in the affirmative sentences.

E.g.

1. May be, after all, there was something in that idea.
2. There are not many British meals in our restaurants perhaps because not every cook can prepare them.

3. She will probably come tomorrow.
4. Is he, possibly, going to be honest?
5. Evidently, she didn't know my address.

**Exercise 1. Insert the right modal word from the list below.**

1. You know very much about the U.K. \_\_\_\_\_ you have been there.
2. She will \_\_\_\_\_ leave Moscow as soon as she is through with her

Exercises.

3. Don't leave the house mother \_\_\_\_\_ come soon and she hasn't got the key.
4. Don't go to the wood alone. You \_\_\_\_\_ lose the way.
5. She is very busy now. \_\_\_\_\_ she will not go to the country.
6. The child couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ have done it alone.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ it was not a tiger, it must be some other kind of animal.
8. \_\_\_\_\_, he is ill. He has not come to school.

probably, evidently, possibly, may, perhaps, may be

**Exercise 2. Make your own sentences using modal words.**

**Exercise 3. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. Greasy – fat or fried meal
2. Bed and breakfast b/b – hotels which supply guests with bed and breakfast.
3. Occasionally – not regularly, from time to time, now and then.
4. Dairy country – the country, where dairy products are produced much and used much.
5. Boring food – not tasty food.
6. Tasty food – delicious food, having flavour.
7. Ingredient – one of the parts of a mixture.

**Exercise 4. Train the pronunciation of words consulting a dictionary.**

1. Greasy – [gri:zi]
2. restaurant - [rest ro] US [resti: rənt]
3. occasionally - [ 'keiʒə nli]
4. boring – [bɔ:ri]
5. dairy – [deə ri]
6. butter – [bʌtə]
7. cheese – [tʃi:z]
8. cream – [kri:m]
9. tasty – [teisti]
10. high quality – [hai kw ai liti]
11. a wide variety of food – [və raɪə ti əv fu:d]
12. disease [di'zi:z]

**Exercise 5. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. Do visitors know much about English food?
2. Are there many British restaurants in other parts of the world?
3. Where can you be offered a cooked breakfast every day?
4. Do British people eat cooked breakfast occasionally or every day?
5. What country is Britain from the point of food?
6. What is the opinion of a person if he has stayed in the U.K.?
7. Whose cuisine can you find in the U.K. besides traditional British good?
8. Can you find ingredients from many parts of the world?
9. Where can you buy ingredients from many parts of the world?
10. Do many people like greasy food?
11. What problems have British farmers had in recent years?
12. Is it safe to eat British meat?

**Exercise 6. Define whether the statement false or true.**

1. Many visitors to Britain have a clear idea about British food.
2. There are a lot of British restaurants in other parts of the world.
3. British people do not like to eat greasy food.
4. Most British people eat a cooked breakfast only occasionally.
5. Dairy products are used in Britain less other than in some countries.
6. You can find Chinese, Indian, Spanish, Italian, Turkish dishes in Britain.
7. Ingredients of Japanese dishes are not brought into Britain.
8. You can't find ingredients of different cuisine in shops and supermarkets.
9. Many people find British food boring.
10. You should taste good home cooking to find British food tasty.

**Exercise 7. Insert prepositions where necessary.**

1. Many visitors \_\_\_\_ Britain find British food tasty.
2. There are not many British restaurants \_\_\_\_ other countries \_\_\_\_ the world.
3. Our delegation has stayed \_\_\_\_ the U.K. recently.
4. You should taste good home cooking in order to speak \_\_\_\_ traditional meals.
5. Mother cooks hot breakfast twice \_\_\_\_ a week.
6. You can find a wide variety \_\_\_\_ food \_\_\_\_ the restaurants.
7. Foot – and – mouth disease \_\_\_\_ sheep was spread in Britain in 2001.
8. Mad cow disease \_\_\_\_ cattle was spread in Britain in 1990s.

## Lesson 2

### TYPICAL TRADITIONAL ENGLISH DISHES

Traditional English dishes have had competition from other dishes over the years. If you visit England, you will still be served up the traditional foods which have been eating for years.

E.G. Harry's mouth fell open. The dishes in front of him were now piled with food. He had never seen so many things he liked to eat on the table: roast beef, roast chicken, pork chops and lamb chops, Yorkshire pudding, peas, carrots, gravy, ketchup and for some strange reason, mint hamburgs. Harry Potter and the Philosopher Stone, J.K. Rowling.

Englishmen would eat most of the dishes below for their main meal of the day. Roast beef and Yorkshire pudding (roast meat, two vegetables and potatoes). This is England's traditional Sunday lunch, which is a family affair.

Yorkshire pudding is not often eaten as a desert like other puddings but as a part of the main course.

Yorkshire pudding, made from flour, eggs and milk, is a sort of batter baked in the oven and usually moistened with gravy.

Toad in the hole (sausage covered in batter and roasted). Similar to Yorkshire pudding but with sausages placed in the batter before cooking.

Roast meats (cooked in the oven for about two hours). Typical meats for roasting are joints of beef, pork, lamb or a whole chicken. More rarely duck, goose, gammon, turkey or game are eaten. Beef is eaten with hot white horse-radish sauce, pork with sweet apple sauce and lamb with green mint sauce.

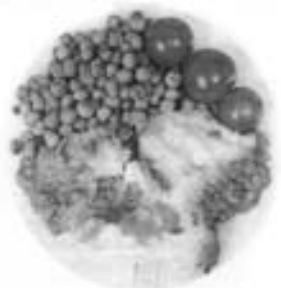
Fish and chips – Fish (cod, haddock, huss, plaice) deep fried in flour batter with chips (fried potatoes) dressed in meat vinegar. This is England's traditional take – away food or as US would say “to go”. Fish and chips are not



Bangers (sausages) and mash



A Christmas lunch: turkey, sausage bacon, bread sauce, sprouts, potatoe



Shepherd's pie, peas and tomatoes



normally home cooking but bought at a fish and chip shop (“chippie”) to eat on premises or as a “take away”.

Shepherds Pie (made with minced lamb and vegetables) topped with mashed potatoes and grated cheese.

Ploughman’s Lunch (a piece of cheese, a bit of pickle and pickled onion, and a chunk of bread). This is served in Pubs.

Hot Pot – a stew, cooked slowly in the oven consisting of meat and vegetables.

Cumberland Sausage - this famous pork sausage is usually presented coiled up like a long rope.

#### Favourite Children meals

Three favourite meals with children are: fish bingers and chips, pizza and baked beans or toast.

Fish and chips	Shepherds pie	Ploughman lunch	Cumberland sausage
----------------	---------------	-----------------	--------------------

### **Exercise 1. Learn and train new words.**

gammon – [gæmən] – окорок

game – [geɪm] – дичь

horseradish [hɔːsrædɪʃ] – хрен

mint – [mɪnt] – мята

batter – [bætə] – тесто

chunk – [tʃʌŋk] – толстый кусок, ломоть хлеба

vinegar – [vɪnɪgə] – уксус

malt – [mɔːlt] – солодовый

to grate – [greɪt] – тереть тёркой

### **Writing**

#### **Exercise 1. Insert an article where necessary.**

Robert Burns, ... son of... small farmer in Ayrshire, was born on... 25<sup>th</sup> of...January, 1759 His parents were poor, so that Burns could not get a good education. He worked hard as... ploughboy. He was fond of reading and always had... ballad book before him father Robert and his brother and sisters took care ... from together, working in ... fields Burns wrote many wonderful songs .

However, things became so bad on... farm, that... poet decided to go to... Jamaica hoping to get...job on...plantation there .Luckily some friends helped Burns to publish... book of poems...opened...doors of... rich

Edinburgh houses to a peasant with such a wonderful talent. In 1788 he married Jean Armour and spent ... peaceful and happy year... rest of his life-story is tale of ... poet’s hardship, ... hard life ruined ... poet’s health, and on ... 21<sup>st</sup> of ... July, 1796 he died at ... age of thirty-seven.

**Exercise 2. Insert an article where necessary.**

Once ... Frenchman was traveling in ... Sweden. He stopped at ... Hotel in ... little Swedish town. It was ... evening, ... man was tired, so he went to ... bed at once. In ... morning he had ... breakfast in ... hotel restaurant. After breakfast he went for ... walk. He walked along ... streets of ... town, visited ... museums and ... shops. Presently he felt hungry and dropped into ... cafe for ... lunch. He sat down at ... table, called ... waiter and ordered ... mushrooms. But ... Frenchman did not know ... Swedish and ... waiter didn't know French. Nobody in ... cafe could speak ... French. Then ... Frenchmen took ... piece of paper and ... pencil and drew the picture of ... mushroom. ... waiter looked at ... picture and left ... room at once. Five minutes later he returned with ... umbrella.

**Exercise 3. Rewrite the sentences using reported speech.**

Eg. I can't hear him. What did he say?..

1. It's going to rain later.

He said \_\_\_\_\_

2. "I will get the review of the book from my friends"

He said \_\_\_\_\_

3. "There is a great choice of programs on TV channel"

He said \_\_\_\_\_

4. "I thing you should recommend this cafe to your mates"

He said \_\_\_\_\_

5. "The winning numbers will be published in the Evening News".

He said \_\_\_\_\_

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Read, activate the words and reproduce a pair work. In pair the following dialogue.**

**A dialogue.**

a. I wonder, what do British people eat for breakfast?

b. Some people usually eat toast with butter and jam or marmalade

a. What about porridges and cereal?

b. Yes, others eat a bowl of cereal, for example, cornflakes with milk, or porridge. (It is a mixture of oats, hot milk and sugar).

a. Is it called a traditional English breakfast?

b. A traditional English breakfast is also known as a cooked breakfast or a try-up. It may contain food such as sausages, bacon, kippers (herring – a type black pudding), scrambled or fried or poached egg, mushrooms, fried tomatoes, baked beans, hash browns and toast.

a. I see, they like to eat eggs in different forms.

b. Yes, people sometimes eat a boiled egg, dipping strips of toast (soldiers) into the egg yolk. The most common drinks at this time of the day are orange juice or a cup or breakfast tea.

- a. I've heard about continental breakfast. What is it?
- b. A continental breakfast is a small meal and is not cooked; for example, a bread roll with cheese, or ham and a cup of coffee
- a. When is breakfast eaten?
- b. It is usually eaten between about 7:30 and 9:00 . Many people have a tea-break at about 11:00 in the morning (elevenses). This meal is eaten in the late morning instead of both breakfast and lunch, it is called brunch.

### New words

1. poached egg – яйцо пашот  
to poach – варить яйцо без скорлупы в кипятке
2. scrambled egg – яичница болтунья
3. hash – мелко нарезанное и перемешанное мясо
4. yolk – желток

**Exercise 2. Make up a conversation on the topic “Lunch” using the words in the box.**

Lunch (luncheon), 12:30-2:00. sandwich (butty, sarnic) cheese (cheddar), biscuits, Branston pickle, a pork pie, Brussels sprouts, Yorkshire pudding, lamb, apple sauce, roast beef turkey, stuffing.

**Exercise 3. Make up a conversation on the topic “Tea-time” using words in the box.**

Tea-time, 3:30 and 5: 00, late afternoon, a small meal, biscuits (Am. Cookies) cakes, sandwiches, crumpets (tea-cakes), a cream tea.

**Exercise 4. Make up a conversation on the topic. “High tea” using words in the box.**

High – tea, 6 o'clock, light meal, supper, 7:00 and 8:30 , a dinner party, meat and 2 vegetable, dessert (pudding) – (afters) , Fast food restaurants, beef burgers, fried chickens, snacks, sweets (Am. candy) , crisps (Am. chips)

**Exercise 5. Retell the text “Common ideas about English food” using words and Expressions from Exercise 4 and 5**

**Exercise 6. Make up and act out dialogues on the topic “Traditional English dishes”.**

**Exercise 7. Explain what is meant by:**

brunch, Yorkshire pudding, shepherds pie, Ploughman's lunch, elevenses, high-tea, poached egg, scrambled egg, fried egg.

**Exercise 8. Use the words and Expressions and act out dialogues between:**

1. a guide and a tourist 2. two foreigners 3. a host and foreign guest	are discussing their impressions on the British food
--	--

### **Culture material**

#### **TEA**

Britain is a tea-drinking nation. Every day they drink 165 million cups of the stuff and each year around 144 thousand tons of tea are imported. Many Britons like their tea strong and dark, but with a lot of milk. The traditional way of making tea is:

1. Boil some fresh cold water
2. Put some hot water into teapot to make it warm
3. Pour the water away
4. Put one teaspoon of tea-leaves per person, and one extra tea-spoon, into the pot.
5. Pour boiling water onto the tea
6. Leave for a few minutes to brew
7. Serve

#### **Did you know?**

If someone asks you if you would like a cuppa they are asking if you would like a cup of tea. If someone says “let me be mother or shall I be mother”, they are offering to pour out the tea from the teapot

#### **Tea words and phrases:**

Tea break , High Tea, Tea time, tea party, tea towel and so on . If something is not quite to your taste. It is probably not your cup of tea.

#### **Coffee**

Coffee is now as popular in Britain as tea is. People either drink it with milk or have it black and either have freshly-made coffee or instant coffee.

#### **The sandwich**

In 1762 the sandwich was invented in England. There is a town named Sandwich in the south of England. John Montagu, the Earl of Sandwich invented a small meal that could be eaten with one hand while he continued his nonstop gambling

### Exercise 1. Answer the question

1. Why is the UK called a tea-drinking country?
2. Can you make tea?
3. What do you do with teapot to make it warm?
4. What does the Expression “Let me be mother” mean?
5. What would you say if you don’t like the taste of smth?
6. What was invented in England in 1762?

### Exercise 2. Rewrite the sentences using reported speech.

E.g. I can’t hear him. What did he say?

1. “It’s going to rain later.” He said \_\_\_\_.
2. “I will get the review of the book from my friend.” He said \_\_\_\_.
3. “There is a great choice of programmes on TV channels.” He said \_\_\_\_.
4. “I think you should recommend this caffī to your mates.” He said \_\_\_\_.
5. “The winning members will be published in the “Evening News”. He said \_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 3. Write sentences using the words in brackets to give the appropriate advice. Choose from the appropriate advice. Choose the following structures: If I were you ... / why don’t you ... .**

1. I don’t understand the maths homework. (ask/teacher).
2. My friend won’t talk to me. (say/sorry).
3. I never have time to eat breakfast. (get up/early).
4. I hate the music my brother listens to (buy/headphones).
5. I don’t have enough pocket money (do/small jobs).

## Speaking

### Exercise 1. Learn the Rhyme and reproduce it.

I. I’m a little teapot, short and stout.  
Here is my handle, here is my spout  
When the water’s boiling, hear my shout  
“Tip me over, pour me out!”

II. I’m a little Snowman, short and fat  
Here’s my broomstick, here is my hat  
When the jolly sunshine comes to stay  
Then I slowly melt away!

**Exercise 2. Here are some English proverbs. Try to find Uzbek/Russian equivalents to them.**

1. Appetite comes with eating.
2. Eat at pleasure, drink with measure.
3. After dinner comes the reckoning.

**Exercise 3. Illustrate these proverbs with a short story. Crossword**

1	2		...	3		4	5	6			7		8		9
...		...	10		...	11			...	...		...		...	
12	13				...		...	...	14	15		16		...	
17							18	19			...		...	20	
21				...	...	22			...	23			...		
	...		...	24					25		...	...	26		
		...	27	...	...		...	...		...	28	...		...	
29		30				...	31								
	...			...	...	...		...	...	...		...		...	
32				33		34		35	36	...		...		...	
	...	37					...	38				39		40	
	...			...	41		...	42		...	...		...		...
...	43						...	44			...	45			

**Across**

1. To ... a question (3)
3. Travellers from the East who came to visit the baby Jesus (5,4,3)
10. "... long" means goodbye (2)
11. The currency for Europe (3)
12. This person makes bread for a living (5)
14. Pop, classical and rock are types of ... (5)
17. Fixed, official travel plans (11)
20. These two letters stand for New York (2)
21. A bird's home (4)
22. A man's name (3)
23. East North East on a compass (3)
24. The person you dance with (7)
26. A hot drink from India or China (3)
29. Sector of industry which sells products to the consumer (6)
31. They were watching their sheep when the angels came and told them the baby Jesus (9)
32. Figures which show trends and make comparisons (19)
37. ... week means the middle of the week (3)
38. A person who works for a company (8)
41. From 12.00 midnight to 12.00 midday (8)
42. Negative answer (2)
43. The opposite of slow (4)
44. France's high speed train (3)
45. Past simple of ride (4)

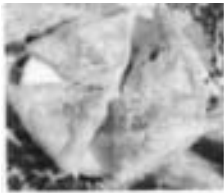
**Down**

2. Exercise is one (5)

3. The past simple of tear (4)
4. A mechanic ... car (7)
5. European Community (2)
6. European Union (2)
7. Emergency signal (3)
8. The Apple ... is a type of computer (3)
9. 31<sup>st</sup> December (3,5,3)
10. Past simple of send (4)
12. Famous US singer who dreamt of a white Christmas (4,6)
13. What you do under mistletoe (4)
14. "Give it to ...!" (2)
15. Someone why uses something (4)
16. You put this in a drink to make it cold (3)
18. It looks like a mouse but it is bigger (3)
19. Old – fashioned name for a hotel (3)
25. The hole in the needle (3)
26. Bird eaten in Britain at Christmas (6)
27. During the Christmas season you go to a lot of them (7)
28. "... I get you another drink?" (5)
30. There are eleven players in a soccer ... (4)
31. You can do this on the snow (3)
33. An ... card shows one who you are. You often need one when you are visiting a company (2)
34. It can be measured in seconds or years. It is also the name of a well – known news magazine (4)
35. The smallest unit of US currency (4)
36. Fog and smoke (4)
39. This house belongs to you and me. It is ... house (3)
40. Finish (3)

### Lesson 3

#### UZBEK MEALS



Somsa



Manti



Palov

**Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words in the box.**  
Cook, ingredients, manti, national, dish, prepare, somsa, bake, meals.

cook – [kuk]  
ingredients – [ɪn'grɪ:dənts]  
national – [ˈnæʃn(ə)l]  
dish – [dɪʃ]  
prepare – [prɪ'peə]  
somsa – [sɒm'sa:]  
bake – [beɪk]  
meals – [mi:lz]

**Exercise 2. Discussion. Questions for the discussion on the picture.**

- 1) What do you see in these pictures?
- 2) Whose national meals are they?
- 3) Where do people bake somsa?
- 4) Where do people cook palov?
- 5) Can you bake somsa?
- 6) What do you put into it?
- 7) Can you prepare manti?
- 8) What do you need to prepare manti?
- 9) Can you cook palov?
- 10) What ingredients do you need to prepare palov?

**Grammar**

**Need can be 1 - a notional verb and 2 - a modal verb**

1- I need some carrots to prepare palov. What do you need to prepare palov?

2 - Must I do it just now? No, you needn't. You needn't do it. Was it necessary to do it? No, you needn't have done it.

**Exercise 1. Define whether need is a notional verb or a modal verb.**

1. I need some carrots, meat, onions and oil to cook palov.
2. What do you need to cook palov?
3. Shall I send the letter now? No you needn't. You may send it tomorrow.
4. Yesterday my lessons began late, so I didn't need to get up early.
5. He needs a pair of summer shoes.
6. He doesn't need to buy summer shoes, he needs warm boots.

**Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentence using modal verb need.**

Examples:

- 1) It is not necessary to go there. You needn't go there.
- 2) It was not necessary to go there. You needn't have gone there.



1. Why do you want to wash the plates? They are not dirty. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It was not necessary for mother to cook such a big dinner. We have brought all the food. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It is not necessary for my mother to write a letter I shall phone her. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It was not necessary for you to remind me about my promise. I remember it very well. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It is not necessary for her to go to the library. I shall give her the book. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It was not necessary for him to stay in the country for the night. He got ill. \_\_\_\_\_

**Exercise 3. Consult a dictionary and train the pronunciation of the word in the box.**

Abundance, to lack wheat, angels, to be tired,  
to mix, magic, divine, sacred, to start

### SUMALAK

Sumalak is a popular Uzbek national meal. It is famous for its sweet taste, abundance of vitamins when in spring people usually lack them. It takes the whole day to cook sumalak. Sumalak means seven angels (ser – seven, malak - angel). The origin of sumalak is very interesting and it has its own legend about its historical origination.

Once upon a time there lived a woman and she had many children. She lived with her children alone and she was very poor. They hardly got anything to eat. Once in early spring her children were very hungry, she couldn't cook anything, because she had only some wheat, which was just growing. So she took wheat, water, several useful plants which grew at the mountains, seven nuts she found in the forest. She put them in kazan (it is a dish like a pan or a big cup) and mixed everything together. She cooked this meal mixing with a big spoon. She was very tired and at midnight she went to sleep.

When she was sleeping, seven angels (Uzbeks say malak, pari, they are not the very angels.) came flying to help her. Then seven angels or malaks sat around the kazan and started cooking this meal mixing it with big spoons. It is said that angels added their magic and divine taste and for that reason sumalak has very sweet taste though there is no sugar in it.

Sumalak is considered a sacred meal.

### SUMALAK, THE RECIPE

For cooking sumalak women must have a bath, be clean. It is said if a person says a wish while mixing sumalak, the wish be realized. For that reason Uzbeks look forward to a day when sumalak is cooked.

For making this Uzbek national meal, you need wheat. The wheat is grown on a wooden board. It is grown for 3-4 days until little sticks are seen. Then the wheat is put into the mikcer and is milled.

In a big kazan is put some oil, milled wheat, some flour, seven nuts and some water. Women sitting around the kazan mix it with big spoons for many hours. Usually it makes the whole day to prepare sumalak. About the evening women close the kazan with a lid and open it only in the morning. The meal will be of brown colour, so our sumalak is ready. You can taste very delicious sumalak. Bon appetite!

recipe [ˈresipi] – рецепт.

to mince – крошить рубить (мясо).

to mill – молоть, дробить (зерно).

#### **Exercise 4. Read and guess the meaning of the words.**

1. Sumalak- means seven malaks (pari), angels.
2. It takes the whole day – it lasts the whole day, one needs the whole day to do smth.
3. To lack – not to have smth.
4. Started cooking – began cooking.
5. Abundance – much quantity of something.

#### **Speech patterns**

1. It takes (me) the whole day to do smth = it lasts the whole day to do smth, one needs the whole day to do smth..
2. How long does it take them to finish this work?
3. It didn't take him much time to read this article.

#### **Ex. 1. Make the following sentences complete.**

1. It takes me ... to get to the college.
2. How long ... to do it?
3. It doesn't take me much time... .
4. ... to translate the letter yesterday.
5. It will ... to finish the translation.
6. ... to read this book?
7. It ... much time to copy out this exercise.
8. ... did it take Nick to cross this distance?

#### **Exercise 2. Paraphrase the following sentences, using the speech patterns.**

E.g. I spend two hours to prepare my home work. It takes me two hours to prepare my homework.

1. He lives in the country. He spends an hour to get to the office....
2. How long did you spend to answer all these letters?....
3. How long did she spend to read this book?....
4. She will spend an hour to translate this letter....
5. She spends 20 minutes to get to her place by underground....
6. My son doesn't spend much time to get up, wash and dress. ...

**Exercise 3. Answer true/false questions to the text.**

E.g. 1. Sumalak is an Uzbek national meal. – true

2. It is famous for its sour taste. – false

1. Sumalak means ten angels.
2. The woman had four children.
3. Once in late spring her children were very hungry.
4. She was very tired and went to sleep.
5. Seven angels or malaks sat around the kazon and started cooking the meal.
6. In spring people usually have abundance of vitamins.

**Exercise 4. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. What is sumalak?
2. What is its taste?
3. How long does it take to cook sumalak?
4. What is the legend about the origin of sumalak?
5. What ingredients did the woman have to cook sumalak?
6. How is the dish called?
7. What did the woman put into the kazon?
8. Who came flying to help her?
9. How can you explain the word sumalak?
10. Why is sumalak so delicious and sweet?

**Exercise 5. Paraphrase the following sentences, using the active words.**

1. Sumalak is often cooked in Uzbekistan.
2. It is usually cooked in spring when people need vitamins.
3. Sumalak is famous for its pleasant taste, much of vitamins.
4. Though people don't put sugar into sumalak it is very tasteful.
5. The parts of the mixture were wheat, water, nuts and several useful plants.
6. When the woman was helpless and went to bed seven angels came flying to help her.
7. After work she had a rest and began cooking.
8. The corn which is used to cook sumalak is.

## Writing

### Exercise 1. Form antonymous pairs

E.g. 1. poor - rich

2. popular - unpopular

3. sweet - sour

1. interesting

6. big

2. something

7. to take

3. early

8. useful

4. to find

9. to sit

5. to start

### Exercise 2. Insert an article where necessary.

1. Look at... sky. It is covered with... dark clouds. Let's hurry... home.

2. It was very pleasant to live in... country in...summer... weather was fine and it seldom ranted. Summer is... fine season.

3. How lovely... night is! There are no... clouds in... sky and ... air is so fresh.

4. When spring comes... sun shines brighter, ... snow melts ,... days become longer.

5. Winter is ... good time for sports.

6. On Sunday my friend and I usually go to ... country. We ski, skate, play ... snowballs and have ... very good time.

### Exercise 3. Choose the odd one out in each.

1. kettle, pan, teapot, chips.

2. fry, boil, cook, lemon

3. pork, mutton, beef, apple

4. sheep, pig, cow, tomato

5. knife, plate, fork, oven

### Exercise 4. Complete these sentences with a suitable verb.

1. Christopher Columbus – America.

2. Magellan – around the world in a boat called Victoria

3. Mendeleev – the Periodic (chemistry table).

4. Mil Armstrong – on the moon on July 20.1969.

5. Ulugbek – an observatory in Samarqand.

## Speaking

**Exercise 1. Give a summary of the text using active words and expression.**

**Exercise 2. Act out dialogue between 2 students on cooking and ingredients of sumalak.**

**Exercise 3. Learn and act out the dialogue.**

### Dialogue

- They say palov is the flagship of Uzbek cooking cuisine? Is it so?

- Yes, it is. Uzbek men are proud of their ability to prepare the most unique and substantial meal.

- How often do they prepare palov?

- It can be prepared in every day life and on holidays or some occasion such as weddings

- How do they prepare it?

- The oshpaz, (or master chief) often cooks palov over an open flame, sometimes serving up to 1000 people from a singlekazan (caldron) containing up to 100 kilograms of rice.

- What are it's ingredients?

- It consists mainly of fried and boiled meat, onions, carrots and rice with raisins, barberries, chickpeas, or fruit added for variation.

- Oh, I'm invited to the wedding party, so I'll go and taste palov.

**Exercise 4. Play a role of a foreigner and a native citizen and discuss Uzbek meals.**

### Exercise 5. A pair work

You are at home and your parents at work. He/she phones you about the ingredients for palov. Look in the kitchen cupboard on the right, in the fridge and answer her/his question.

A. Have you got any meat at home?

B. Yes, we have some.

A. Beef or mutton?

B. We have got some beef.

A. I want to cook palov so I'll buy some mutton.

B. Don't forget to bring yellow carrots and a little raisins. They make palov very delicious.

A. All right. I like palov with raisins.

**Read, discuss and retell the text.**

## TEXT II

### UZBEK CUISINE

The culture of Uzbek nation is one of the most ancient and refined in Central Asia. A distinctive and well – developed aspect of Uzbek culture is their cuisine. The Uzbeks have had a settled civilization for centuries. Between the deserts and mountains, in the oasis and fertile valley, they cultivated grain and demonstrated livestock. The resulting abundance of produce allowed them to express their strong tradition of hospitality, which in turn enriched their cuisine.

The seasons, especially winter and summer, greatly influence the composition of the basic menu. In the summer fruits, vegetables and nuts grow everywhere. Fruits grow in abundance in Uzbekistan grapes, lemons, figs, dates vegetables are no less plentiful, including some lesser known species such as green radishes yellow – carrots, dozen of pumpkin, and squash varieties in addition to the usual eggplants, peppers, turnips, cucumbers and luscious tomatoes.

The winter diet traditionally consists of dried fruits and vegetables and preserves. But now days fresh fruits and green vegetables are available every day. Hearty noodle or pasta - type dishes are also common chilly weather fare.

In general, mutton is the preferred source of protein in the Uzbek diet. Fatty failed sheep are prized not only for their meat and far as a source of cooking oil, but for their wool as well. Beef and horsemeat are also consumed in substantial quantities. Camel and goat meat are less common.

Central Asia has a reputation for the richness and delicacy of their fermented dairy products. The most often used is katyk, or yoghurt made from sour milk, and zuzma similar to cottage cheese, are eaten plain, in salads, or added to soups and main product, resulting in a unique and delicious flavor.

**Exercise 1. Divide the text into paragraphs and answer the questions to the text.**

1. What paragraphs say about one of the aspects of Uzbek culture – its cuisine?
2. In what passage is it written about the winter diet?
3. Which paragraph informs us about dairy products in Uzbekistan?
4. What paragraph says about the types of consumed meat?
5. In what paragraph is it written about the varieties of fruits and vegetables?

**Exercise 2. Fill in the gaps with proper words and expressions from the text.**

1. The territory of Uzbekistan is situated between \_\_\_\_\_ and mountains, in the \_\_\_\_\_ and fertile valley.
2. The abundance of product allow people to express their \_\_\_\_\_.
3. In summer fruits, vegetables and \_\_\_\_ grow everywhere.
4. In winter people use \_\_\_\_\_ fruits, vegetables and \_\_\_\_\_.
5. But nowadays people use fresh fruits and green vegetables which are \_\_\_\_\_ every day.
6. The most often used dairy products is \_\_\_\_\_ which is similar to cottage cheese.

**Word building suffixes: tion, sion form nouns from verbs.**

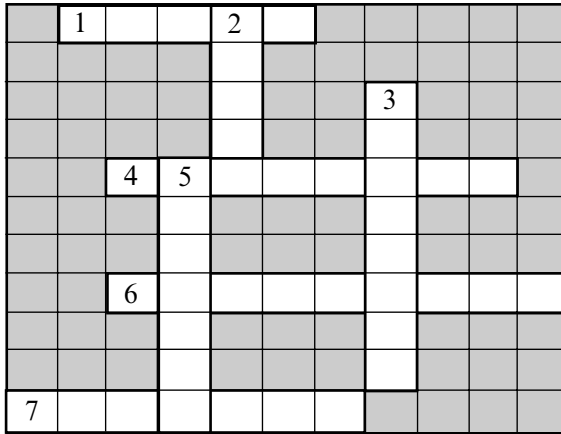
to repeat – repetition  
 to revise – revision  
 to compose – composition  
 to translate - translation

**Exercise 3. Complete the puzzle.**

- E.g. 1. He works in a police station – policeman.
2. He/she works in reception at a hotel –
  3. He/she looks after people who are ill –
  4. He/she works with electrical things –
  5. He/she looks after people’s teeth –
  6. He/she works in the caffè –
  7. He/she cuts hair –
  8. He/she plays music –
  9. He/she plays football –
  10. He/she works in business –

<b>2</b>	<b>P</b>	
<b>3</b>	<b>o</b>	
<b>4</b>	<b>l</b>	
<b>5</b>	<b>i</b>	
<b>6</b>	<b>c</b>	
<b>7</b>	<b>e</b>	
<b>8</b>	<b>m</b>	
<b>9</b>	<b>a</b>	
<b>10</b>	<b>n</b>	

## Crossword



### Down

2. A group of people who came first from Saudi Arabia and countries in the Northern Africa, and now live all over the Middle East.
3. A written work dealing formally and systematically with a certain subject.
5. A once- large saltwater lake straddling the boundary between Kazakhstan to the north and Uzbekistan to the south. (2 words)

### Across

1. A religion whose believers (Muslims) follow the teaching of Allah (God) as given to the Prophet Muhammad more than a thousand years ago.
4. The capital of Uzbekistan
6. A process or set of rule used for calculation or solving a problem, especially with a computer.
7. A company of merchants or pilgrims traveling together across a desert in Asia and Northern Africa.

## Lesson 4

### AMERICAN MEALS



**Train the pronunciation of the active words.**

1. Hamburger ['hæmbə:gə]
2. Cheeseburger [tʃi: zbə:gə]
3. Barbecue ['bɑ:bikju:]
4. Hotdogs [hɒt'dɒgz]
5. Poppy – seed rolls



## Discussion

1. With what country are these food items associated?
2. Can you think of any “typical foods” that are associated with one country?
3. Do people eat these foods every day?
4. Do they belong to “fast food” or “home made” meals?
5. When do people eat them? Explain your point of view.



## Grammar

### Model: must, to have to

1. You mustn't smoke here. This is a non – smoking compartment.
2. I can't find my pen anywhere. I must have lost it.
3. Peter had a toothache. He will have to go to the dentist.
4. He was ill. He had to stay in bed for 2 weeks.

### Exercise 1. Make up sentences and translate them into Uzbek/Russian

She		study	the importance of studying English
He		have studied	hard during the last two month
You	must	have understood	hard to improve her English
We		have been studying	next month
His		feel tired	after a long walk
Book		be published	

### Exercise 2. Make up sentences and translate them into Uzbek/Russian

I	Have	to work	at six o'clock
You	Has	to leave	dinner after her work
They	Had	to cook	till late an night
Mother	Shall have	to cover	to him about it
The girl	Will have	to speak	his examinations
She		to pass	there alone tomorrow
He		to go	many letters
The		to answer	all the program
work		to repeat	the whole distance on foot today
		to be done	

**Exercise 3. Read the prompting sentence. Express your opinion and give different suggestions about the situation.**

<p><b>Model.</b> She looks very tired. a. She must have worked a lot yesterday. b. She must be working too hard. c. She must be unwell. d. She must have a rest.</p>
--

1. He knows many things about England.
2. I invited him to call on us yesterday, but he didn't come.
3. He was late for the first lecture.
4. She is sneezing and coughing.
5. They come home wet to the bone.

**Exercise 4. Read the situation and make up dialogue.**

<p><b>Model.</b> A. My mother fell ill yesterday. B. Did you have to send for a doctor? A. Yes, I did. She had a very high temperature.</p>
---

1. My friend fell ill and missed many lessons.
2. I had to help him with his English.
3. I had to try on several dresses before I chose this one.
4. My luggage was very heavy and I had to call a porter to carry it to the waiting - room.
5. On hearing the news she began to cry.

**Exercise 5. Make questions with have to.**

E.g. Tom had to go to the police station.  
Why did he have to go to the police station?

1. She has to leave tomorrow. What time \_\_\_?
2. We had to answer a lot of questions in the examination. How many questions \_\_\_?
3. I have to get up early tomorrow. Why \_\_\_?
4. He had to pay a parking fine. How much \_\_\_?

**Exercise 6. Make negative sentences with have to.**

E.g. Did you get up early this morning?  
No, it's my day off, so I didn't have to get up early.

1. Did you pay to get into the concert? No, we had free tickets so we \_\_\_.
2. Are you going home? No, my secretary is ill and I \_\_\_.

3. Do you work? No, I am on pension so I \_\_\_\_.
4. Why are you on foot? My car needs repairing so I \_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 7. Complete the sentences with mustn't or don't/doesn't, have to.**

- E.g. 1. You mustn't forget what I told you. It's very important.  
 2. She didn't have to go to work, so she stayed in bed this morning.
1. I don't want anyone to know. You \_\_\_\_ tell anyone what I said.
  2. I \_\_\_\_ wear a tie to work but I usually do.
  3. She \_\_\_\_ get up early. She gets up early because she likes to.
  4. You \_\_\_\_ touch that switch. It is very dangerous.

**Exercise 8. Complete the sentences using to have to.**

- E.g. Peter has a toothache. He will have to go to the dentist's.
1. I have lost my pen. \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. Peter was ill and missed many lessons so \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. Peter was ill. It was necessary for him to stay in bed for 2 weeks \_\_\_\_\_.
  4. He looked so gloomy and disappointed. It was necessary for us to cheer him up. \_\_\_\_\_.
  5. My grandmother is shortsighted. She has to wear eyeglasses. \_\_\_\_\_.
  6. We have missed the last tram. \_\_\_\_\_.
  7. My friend was in trouble. \_\_\_\_\_.
  8. He wants to put up at the hotel "Uzbekistan". \_\_\_\_\_.
  9. My mother was ill yesterday and \_\_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 9. Complete the sentences using must with prompting words.**

- E.g. You mustn't smoke here. This is a non – smoking compartment.
1. I can't find my pen anywhere. (to lose)
  2. Ann refused to go to the cinema with us. (to see)
  3. Look how sun burnt he is. (to spend)
  4. My friend was ill and missed many lessons. (to work hard)
  5. Our train will start in five minutes. (to hurry)
  6. I can't find my favorite cup. (to break)

### Reading

**Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation and translate the following words into your mother tongue:**

1. summit conference –
2. hodgepodge or hotch – potch.
3. fall –
4. hamburger –
5. to be contented –

6. cantinas (Mexican - American) –
7. tortillas –
8. chillies –
9. enchiladas –
10. poppy seed rolls –
11. turkey –
12. succotash –
13. cranberry –
14. to braise –
15. barbecue –
16. to spit –
17. to grill –
18. ketchup –

## Lesson 5

### SEARCHING FOR THE AMERICAN CUISINE

At the First International Food Summit Conference held in Bangkok a few years ago, the Americans weren't invited to participate. Why? America doesn't have a national cuisine, the French director said.

I have to admit he is right. America is a hodgepodge of everything from everywhere. But then, maybe after 200 years, it is time the Americans created a national cuisine. I decided to give my full attention to this last fall when I made a motor trip across the country.

I know you can't make hamburgers a national dish, but I like hamburgers when hamburgers are served in America. Thus when I arrived in Los Angeles from Bangkok, I would have been contented dining on hamburgers for my first meal.

From Los Angeles I headed south, through New Mexico and Arizona. In small towns, away from the highways, I stopped at Mexican cantinas, where



the food is hot. And what food! Wild, spicy tortillas. Enchiladas with cheese, and stuffed with red chilies. I like this food, but decided not to make enchiladas a national dish. From the Southwest I headed north, to middle America – the Dakotas, Minnesota and Wisconsin, a land with deep forests

and tens of thousand of lakes. I spent the night in one town famous for its cheese. I ate cheeses I never tasted before. Those who live in the Midwest are like to their cheese from their own dairy farms. Their products are such favorites as Edam, Gouda, Cheddar, Mozzarella blue and Brie. But they also make cheese you wouldn't find served anywhere in France – Ziederkrantz and brick Cheese – both native American.



I was anxious to reach the small Pennsylvania farming community where I was born. I was going home. Now here, certainly, I would find American's national cuisine "You must be hungry, Harold", my great aunt said when I sat down to break fast. My break fast was – sliced ham and sausage and four eggs, five pieces of toasts, home made jam, a couple glasses of bubbly fresh milk delivered that morning, followed by pots of coffee and freshly baked poppy – seed rolls.

In the land of plenty, it's content rather than styled that counts. "Have some more" My aunt said and poured another cup of coffee and cut two more slabs of poppy – seed rolls.

From Pennsylvania I drove up to visit friends in New – England. Snow was still on the ground, and the fireplace glowed. "How about a good American meal as a reminder", they said. And an American meal they served up that evening was that fat and freshly native American bird they call turkey. Turkey, as American as hamburgers! Turkey the centerpiece of Thanksgiving, originally the Pilgrims ceremony of gratitude for survival in their new and bounteous land. And what could have been more American than all the trimmings that went with our meal – chestnut stuffing, served with sweet potatoes, corn, Brussels sprouts, squash, succotash, creamed onions and cranberry sauce and topped off with pumpkin pie.

### **Exercise 1. Answer the questions to the text:**

1. Why were not Americans invited to the first International Food Summit Conference?
2. Where was the 1<sup>st</sup> International Food Summit Conference held?
3. To what problem did the author decide to give his full attention?
4. What kind of trip did the author make across the country?
5. From what country did the author arrive in Los Angeles?
6. What would he like to have for his first meal?



7. What is the food at Mexican cantinas?
8. What state did the author visit in Middle America?
9. Are there any dairy farms producing cheese in the Midwest?
10. Where was the author born? Where did he come from?
11. Can you describe the breakfast he had at home?
12. What bird is the centerpiece of Thanksgiving Holiday?

**Exercise 2. Define whether the statement true or false.**

1. The first International Food Summit Conference was held in Manila.
2. The author thinks that America is a hodgepodge of everything from everywhere.
3. The previous fall he made a motor trip across the country.
4. He can't make hamburgers a national dish, but he likes hamburgers when they are served in America.
5. The food at Mexican Cantinas is hot.
6. You can find deep forest, tens of thousands of lakes in the south of America.
7. The author was born in a small Pennsylvania farming community.
8. The author's name was Harold.
9. From New England he drove up to visit his friends in Pennsylvania.
10. Turkey, the centerpiece of Thanksgiving was served without any vegetables.

**Exercise 3. Insert the right prepositions where it is necessary.**



1. American's were not invited \_\_\_ the conference which was held \_\_\_ Bangkok.
2. The author decided to make a motor trip \_\_\_ the country.
3. They organized a food conference some years \_\_\_ and Americans didn't participate \_\_\_ it.
4. \_\_\_ from the highways, the author stopped \_\_\_ Mexican cantinas, where the food is hot.
5. He spent the night \_\_\_ a town famous \_\_\_ its cheese.

6. His breakfast consisted \_\_\_ sliced ham and sausage and four eggs, five pieces of toasts, home – made jam a couple glasses of milk, pots of coffee and freshly baked rolls.

**Exercise 4. Paraphrase the sentences using words and expressions from the text.**

1. A few years ago the First International Food Summit Conference took place in Bangkok.

2. The organizers of the conference didn't invite the Americans to take part in it.

3. The author of the article decided to pay all his attention to the real American cuisine.

4. Last autumn he made a motor trip across the country.

5. I was eager to reach the Small Pennsylvania farming community where I was born.

6. "Have some more," my aunt said and poured author cup of coffee and cut two more pieces of poppy – seed roll.

**Exercise 5. Find the synonyms in the text to the following words and expressing.**

1. autumn

2. to pay attention

3. high level conference

4. to be satisfied with

5. to go

6. woods

7. to be known

8. to be eager to do smth.

9. pieces of bread

10. through

**Exercise 6. Choose the correct answer and fill in the gaps to complete the sentences.**

1. Baseball become – in Japan after World War II

A) interesting

B) popular

2. Baseball is also – played in Cuba.

A) nearly

B) widely.

3. The hamburger was – to the USA by German immigrants

A) brought

B) bought

4. Hollywood is a good – for making films.

A) location

B) local

5. The Statue of Liberty – at the entrance to New York harbors.

A) places

B) stands

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Retell the text using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Read and remember about the history of the American English.**

In the United States of America English is the national language. Four hundred years ago some English people came to the North of America to live there, and they brought the English language to this new country. Now in the USA people speak American English. A lot of words are the same in American and British English, but there are words which are different in British and American variants of the English language. Here are some of them.

**Exercise 3. Learn the difference between American and British English.**

British English	American English
<b>1. TIME</b>	
autumn	fall
holiday	vacation
fortnight	two weeks
<b>2. BUILDINGS</b>	
shop	store
flat	apartment
ground floor	first floor
lift	elevator
(gents/ladies) toilet	bathroom (men's/ladies room)
<b>3. FOOD</b>	
biscuits	cookies
sweets	candy
chips	french fries
crisps	chips
<b>4. CLOTHERS</b>	
trousers	pants
waistcoat	vest
vest	undershirt
trainers	sneakers
<b>5. ROADS AND TRANSPORT</b>	
petrol	gas
underground	subway
lorry	truck
<b>6. EDUCATION</b>	
form	grade
secondary school	high school

**Exercise 4. Say some words about the history of the American English.**

**Exercise 5. Decide if the speaker is using British English or American English. Cross the incorrect variants.**

1. I had my vacation in autumn/fall last year.
2. He never eats biscuits or sweets/candy.



3. The trousers look nice with that waistcoat/vest.
4. My apartment is on the fourth floor but there's no lift/elevator.
5. The people next door are on holiday/vacation. They will be away for a fortnight.
6. Our car was in the car park/parking lot and we took the subway to the centre.
7. My trainers are in the wardrobe/closet.

**Exercise 6. Complete the table.**

	vacation			biscuits
trousers			two weeks	
	apartment			underground
trainers			pants	
	high school			lorry

**Exercise 7. Put the verb in the right form.**

1. People living in the south \_\_\_\_\_ of their region. (to be conscious, to be proud)
2. This meal \_\_\_\_\_ by skillful negroes \_\_\_\_\_ deliciously. (To prepare, to taste)
3. Southern cooking \_\_\_\_\_ corn, fish and fowl. (to consist of)
4. Growing pigs \_\_\_\_\_ in abundance of pork, ham, and fried cornmeal cakes in the diet. (to result)
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ a few people over for barbeque this evening. (to have)
6. You can prepared barbeque by \_\_\_\_\_. (to spit, to pit, to grill)
7. All kinds of fruits and vegetables \_\_\_\_\_ in rich soil and excellent climate. (to grow)
8. There \_\_\_\_\_ deep forests and thousands of lakes in Middle America. (to be)
9. I \_\_\_\_\_ hamburgers when hamburgers \_\_\_\_\_ in America. (to like, to serve)
10. The author \_\_\_\_\_ to reach the small farming community where he \_\_\_\_\_. (to be anxious, to be born)

**Exercise 8. Match the questions with the number of the paragraphs.**

1. Which paragraphs speaks about the mid – Atlantic food culture?
2. In what paragraph is barbecue preparing described?
3. Which paragraph speaks about the influence of ethnic background and country's climate on the national food?
4. Which paragraph informs about rich soil and excellent climate to grow all kinds of fruits and vegetables?
5. Which paragraph describes the characteristic features of Southerners?

## Speaking

**Exercise 1. Give the title to the logically complete paragraphs of the text.**

**Exercise 2. Locate on the map of the USA Gerald's route across the country.**

**Exercise 3. Consult the dictionary and train the names of 50 states and their capitals.**

**Exercise 4. Retell the text using new words and expressions.**

## Writing

**Exercise 1. Write down the gist of the text on behalf of the 3<sup>rd</sup> person.**

**Exercise 2. Make up a story about a foreigner's trip to the USA.**

**Exercise 3. Change a dialogue into a reported speech.**

## Culture material

### I. Holidays in the USA

## THANKSGIVING DAY

In 1620, a religious community sailed across the Atlantic Ocean to settle in the New World. They settled in what is now known as the state of Massachusetts. Their first winter in America was difficult. They arrived too late to grow a rich harvest. Moreover, half the colony died from disease. The following spring the Iroquois Indians taught them how to grow corn. Indians showed them also how to grow other crops and how to hunt and fish.

In autumn of 1621 they got a beautiful harvest of corn, barley, beans and pumpkins. The colonists had much to be thankful for, so they planned a feast. Local Indian chief and ninety Indians were present. The colonists learned from Indians how to cook cranberries and dishes of corn and pumpkins.

In following years many of the colonists celebrated the harvest with a feast of thanks. After the United States gained independence, the Congress recommended one yearly day of thanksgiving for the whole country. Later, George Washington suggested the date November 26 as Thanksgiving Day. Then, after the civil war, Abraham Lincoln suggested the last Thursday in November to be the day of thanksgiving.

On Thanksgiving Day, family members gather at the house of an older relative, even if they live far away. All give thanks for everything good they have. Charitable organizations offer traditional meals to the homeless.

Food, eaten at the first thanksgiving, have become traditional. The traditional thanksgiving meal consists of roast turkey stuffed with herb-flavoured bread, cranberry jelly, mashed potatoes, pumpkin pie. Other dishes may vary as to region: ham, sweet potatoes, creamed corn.

### **Exercise 1. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. How did the first settlers express their gratitude to God for their survival in a New Land?
2. When do they celebrate this day?
3. What meal is usually prepared on that day?
4. Who thought the Europeans to grow corn, to hunt, to fish?

### **Exercise 2. Read the text, which festival is being described?**

On ..... , American people celebrate the harvest with their family and friends.

In kitchens across the country, people prepare such traditional foods of the season as turkey, cranberry sauce and pumpkin pie.

This American holiday has been celebrated since the seventeenth century (1621).

**Exercise 3. Say whether the author is proud of his country, of its people working in farms, of its cuisine, of its climate. Prove your point of view.**

**Exercise 4. Speak about your own country and its wealth.**

## **AMERICANS LOOK FOR HEALTH ON THE MENU**

According to the results of a new consumer survey Americans became more diet – conscious. People differed from very nutrition – conscious to those that were very indulgent. These dining styles existed across all walks of life, from young to old, rich and poor and among men and women and all races.

Among the other key findings are: watching weight and limiting fat intake continue to be common goals in choosing foods.

More than twenty – one percent of people are attempting to limit their intake of trans – fatty acids, carbohydrates and artificial sweeteners in their diet.

In addition 52 percent of adults report exercising twice a week, up from 48 percent a year ago. This increase and exercise in general was typical of the most nutrition – conscious groups. People are satisfied with healthy food available at dining restaurants and at fast food restaurants.

The survey also found that eating breakfast and dinner out grew by more than 27 percent. People ate breakfast away from home once a week and ate dinner out three times a week. Experts think that much still needs to be done to get Americans to eat healthier.

American adults just don't get serious about nutrition until serious illness sets in. Though time convenience and value are important for the Americans, concerns about healthy food have now moved up and become very significant – new consumer survey informs now.

**Exercise 1. Answer the question to the text.**

1. What kind of people did Americans become according to the results of a new consumer survey?
2. Did dining styles exist across all walks of life?
3. What are the other key findings of the survey?
4. What percentage of people is attempting to keep a diet?
5. What are common goals in choosing foods?
6. What percentage of adults is exercising every week?
7. What is typical of the most nutrition – conscious groups?
8. Do all Americans take their meals only at home?
9. What do experts think about eating healthier?
10. What kind of products do they limit to intake?

**Exercise 2. Define whether the statement true or false.**

1. Dining styles existed only among men and women.
2. Watching weight and limiting fat intake are main goals in choosing foods.
3. Twenty – five percent of people are limiting their intake of Trans – fatty acids, carbohydrates and sweeteners.
4. The increase in exercising is typical of all groups of population.
5. Healthy meals are available in dining restaurants and at fast food restaurants.
6. Eating breakfast and dinner out grew by more than 27 percent.
7. Concerns about healthy food have now moved up and become significant.
8. Time, convenience and value in choosing food are not important for the Americans.

**Look, read, and guess the meaning.**

1. Diet conscious, nutrition conscious people – people who understand the importance of diet and keep to diet, to healthy food.
2. Consumer survey – researches studying the usage of foods.
3. Walks of life (in life) – social position, profession occupation.
4. Key findings – important findings.
5. Common goals – common aims.
6. Artificial – not natural.
7. Increase – growth.
8. Intake – using, eating.

**Learn and remember: Word derivation**

nutrition – noun – food [nju:ˈtrɪn] – питание, пища

nutritive – 1) – noun - nourishing stuff [ˈnju:tritiv] – питательное вещество  
2) – adjective – nourishing – питательный, пищевой  
nutritiousness – noun – food value [nju:ˈtrɪfʃnɪs] – питательность

**Exercise 4. Paraphrase the sentences using new words and expressions.**

1. A new consumer survey informs that Americans became very conscious about their food.
2. People of all occupations from young to old, rich and poor, men and women differ greatly in their food style.
3. When people choose food they use fat intake as little as possible.
4. One of the necessary aims is to watch weight.
5. The survey reports that 52 percent of adults are training twice a week.
6. Useful food is available at dining restaurant and fast food restaurants.

**Test on meals**

**Exercise 5. Fill in the gap with a suitable word from the box below.**

1. People try to limit their intake of \_\_\_\_\_ in their diet.
2. Americans differ greatly from very \_\_\_ to those that were very indulgent.
3. People try to save time but \_\_\_ about healthy food have become very \_\_\_.
4. Usually people are satisfied with \_\_\_\_\_ food at restaurants.

Healthy, significant, concerns, nutrition, conscious, artificial sweeteners
--

**Exercise 6. Match the words with the proper meaning.**

**Cook/fry/boil/simmer/bake/stew/roast**

..... - prepare food: make ready or fit for eating by the means of heat;  
person who prepares food

..... - heat to a temperature at which vapour forms (100 C for water);  
prepare (as food) in a liquid heated to the point that it begins to give off  
steam.

..... - cook in dry heat especially in an oven

..... - cook in a lot of fat or oil

..... - cook by dry heat (e.g. on a gridiron)

..... - stew gently; cook in a liquid at a temperature below boiling point

..... - cook in a little liquid, usually with the lid on the pot; a dish of  
boiled meat and vegetables.



---

---

## UNIT 5.

### FAMOUS PEOPLE OF THE WORLD

#### Lesson 1

#### ISAAC NEWTON

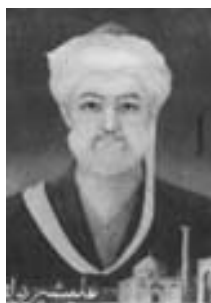
**Exercise 1.** Look at the pictures and match them with the words given in the box and try to guess their names.



Elizabeth



Lincoln



A.Navoi

Poet, scientist, physicist, queen, statesman.

#### Discussion

Questions for discussion on the picture.

1. Who is there in the picture? What is his (her) name?
2. What does he (she) do?
3. What kind of discoveries did he make?
4. What kind of works did he write?

**Exercise 1. Fill in the dialogue with the words given in the box.**

#### Dialogue 1

A: Who is there in the picture? Do you know his name?

B: Yes, (to know) ... .. ; No, (not to know)

A: Why don't you know his name? He is a famous ..... (statesman) ... .

B: I am sorry, I can't remember his (her) name.

#### Grammar Practice

Rule: Negative, interrogative questions is formed by adding negative particle "not" after auxiliary verb in the questions.

**Model: Why don't you know him?**

1. Why doesn't Marry come to her lessons?
2. Why didn't Nick go to the seaside?
3. Why won't you go to the mountains with them for the weekend?

**Exercise 1. Form interrogative negative sentences.**

1. I don't know anything about Newton – Why ... you know anything about Newton?
2. Ann hasn't come to Kate's birthday. – Why ... Ann come to Kate's birthday?
3. We didn't know the law of gravitation – Why .... you know the law of gravitation?
4. When apple fell down it doesn't go sideways or upwards. Why .... apple go sideways or upwards?
5. Nick doesn't know the nature of white colour – Why ..... Nick know the nature of white colour?
6. When was Newton born?- I don't remember.- Why ..... you remember?
7. Newton said that white colour consists of different colours (ones).- Why .... you read this passage about colours?
8. Who discovered the law of gravitation? –I don't know. Why ..... you know it?

**Exercise 2. Give the correct form of the question.**

1. Why you (not to know) these words? Unfortunately I couldn't revise them yesterday.
2. Why you (not to answer) my question? Shall I repeat it?
3. Why Bob (not to come) to his lesson? He couldn't, he had to help his father with his work.
4. Why Alice (not to attend) her lectures yesterday?
5. Why you (not to know) your homework?
6. Why you (not to take) part in the competition?

**Read the following text, translate it into your native language and discuss it in the classroom.**

**ISAAC NEWTON  
(1642–1726)**

Newton, one of the greatest scientists of all times, was born in 1642 in the little village Lincolnshire, England. His father was a farmer and died before Newton was born. His mother was a clever woman whom he always loved.

After the school, Newton studied mathematics at Cambridge University and received his degree in 1665. Then the University was closed because of



the danger of plague and Newton went home for eighteen months. It was most important period in his life when he made his three great discoveries of the differential calculus, of the nature of white light, and of the law of gravitation.

These discoveries are still important for the modern science. Newton had always been interested in the problems of light. Many people saw colours of rainbow but only Newton showed, by his experiments, that white light consists of these colours.

It is interesting how he discovered the law of gravitation. Once, as he sat at the garden, his attention was drawn by the fall of an apple. Many people saw such usual thing before. But it was Newton who asked himself a question: "Why does that apple fall perpendicularly to the ground? Why doesn't it go sideways or upwards?" The answer to this question was the theory of gravitation, discovered by Newton.

Newton died at the age of 84, and was buried in Westminster Abbey, where his monument stands today.

### Phonetic Drill

#### Train to the pronunciation of these new words:

degree - [digi: ] – звание, ученая степень  
plague - [pleig] - чума  
discovery – [diskʌvəri] - открытие  
differential – [difərənʃiəl] – дифференциальный  
calculus – [kælkjuləsiz] – исчисление  
law of gravitation – [lɔ: græviteiʃn] – закон притяжения  
rainbow – [reɪnbou] – радуга  
to draw attention – [drɔ:ətənʃn] – привлекать внимание  
perpendicularly – [pə: rən'dikjuləli] – перпендикулярно  
upwards – [ʌpwə:dz] – вверх  
sideways – [saidwədz] – в сторону, в бок  
abbey – [æbi] – аббатство  
to be born - [bɔ:n] – родиться

#### Discussion. Questions for discussion on the text.

1. When and where was Newton born? What kind of woman was his mother?
2. Where did he study and why did he return home after receiving his degree?
3. What three major discoveries did Newton make?
4. When did he make these discoveries?
5. How did the idea which led to the discovery of the law of gravitation first come to him?
6. When did Newton die and where was he buried?

**Exercise 1. Find out whether these statements true or false.**

1. I. Newton studied at Oxford University and got his degree in 1665.
2. When Newton was sitting in the garden an apple fell down to the ground and it drew his attention.
3. The theory of gravitation is discovered by Faraday.
4. The apple fell down to the ground perpendicularly but not sideways or upwards.
5. I. Newton showed, by his experiments, that white light consists of different colours of a rainbow.
6. The University of Cambridge was closed in 1665 before Newton could get a degree.

**Exercise 2. Find the words according to their definition by matching them.**

- |                |                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. rainbow     | a) bring into view                |
| 2. plague      | b) force towards the earth        |
| 3. gravitation | c) building in the service of God |
| 4. abbey       | d) different colours              |
| 5. degree      | e) disease                        |
| 6. discovery   | f) academic title                 |

**Exercise 3. Complete the following sentences using the active words.**

1. The Houses of Parliament are situated in London on the riverside near Westminster .....
2. Michel Faraday made countless ..... in chemistry and physics.
3. Courtroom is the place where everybody should get a square deal of any colour of the .....
4. An apple which fell doesn't go .... or upwards, but fell perpendicularly to the ground.
5. Many famous writers, scientists, kings, and queens .... in Westminster Abbey.
6. Isaac Newton was interested in the nature of white .....
7. .... Abbey is a very beautiful ancient church in London.
8. The museums, galleries, theatres, cinemas and pubs of the West End drew every tourist's .....

**Exercise 4. Form new words with the suffix "wards" by adding them to the words given in the line A and write them in line B and translate them into your native language.**

A

1. up
2. down
3. side
4. to

B

- upwards
- downwards
- sidewards
- towards

**Exercise 5. Fill in the blanks with suffix “wards”**

1. The telephone rang and so disordered was the nervous system that I shot ceiling ... at the sound.
2. Dobbin walked off moodily West ... greatly perturbed as to the past and future.
3. They surged on ... like a riotous crowd in narrow streets.
4. She jerked prissy to her feet and sent her kitchen ... with a shove.

**Exercise 6. Insert articles where necessary.**

1. Soon he saw ... light in the distance and understood that he was on ... right track.
2. There always was ... certain dampness about the room.... ceiling and walls were covered with wet patches.
3. What ... pleasure to see you again!
4. ... Volga is ... longest river in ... Europe; it flows from ... Valdai Hills to ... Caspian Sea.
5. I can't forget ... holiday which we spent in ... Crimea two years ago.
6. ... British Isles are situated in ... North of Europe.
7. ... soldier couldn't reach ... other bank of ... Ural as he was badly wounded.
8. Come and stay with us for ... week or there about we should be only glad!

**Exercise 7. Choose the sentence contradicting the others.**

- A. Listen to others as you want them to listen to you.
- B. Talk so that all can hear you.
- C. While listening you may not understand something that is said.
- D. First listen and when the speaker has stopped talking, ask your question (which you don't understand)
- E. When listening someone never break in.

**Speaking**

**Pair work. Stage this dialogue.**

## Exercise 1.

### Dialogue 1.

Ali: I think the nature of white light was discovered by Faraday.

Dilbar: Oh, no. You are quite wrong. It was discovered by Isaac Newton.

Ali: You see, the colours of a rainbow come from white colour, don't they?

Dilbar: Yes, you are right. Newton proved it by his experiments.

### Exercise 2. Arithmetical problem (for a rest).

Old Smith had a family of sons and daughters. Each daughter had an equal number of brothers and sisters, but each son had twice as many sisters as brothers. How many boys and girls were there in their family?

### Exercise 3. Learn this poem by heart.

#### GIRLS AND BOYS

Girls and boys, come out to play!  
The moon shines as bright as day  
Leave your supper and leave your sleep  
And join your playfellows down the street.

Come with a whoop and come with a ball,  
Come with a good will or not come at all,  
Up the ladder and down the wall,  
Halfpenny loaf shall feed us all.

### Writing

**Exercise 1. Change "Dialogue 1" into indirect speech paying much attention to the sequence of tenses and write it down, answering the question "What did he (she) say?"**

**Exercise 2. Write an essay:**

1. Law of gravitation.
2. The nature of white light.

## Lesson 2

### QUEEN ELIZABETH II

**Warming up.**

**Exercise 1. Look at the pictures and discuss them with your group-mates using the words and questions given below (the pictures) it.**

Words:

1. son-in-law
2. daughter-in-law
3. mother-in-law
4. father-in-law

### Questions for discussion on the picture

Words:

1. Who is the queen of the UK?
2. What is Elizabeth II? Where does she live?
3. How many children has she got?
4. What do you know about Charles and Lady Diana?

### Grammar practice

**Interrogative negative sentences.**

**Model:** Why won't you come tomorrow?



Lady Diana

### Exercise 1. Form interrogative negative sentences.

1. Why you (not to take) part in the conference?  
I could not because I was on business trip in Spain.
2. Why you (not to go) to the museum of Amir Temur with your group?  
I couldn't because I had to stay at home with my son.
3. Why you (not to know) this grammar rule?  
Because we haven't taken them yet.
4. Why you (not to swim) in the river regularly?  
Because I'm afraid of snakes as they say there are snakes in it.
5. Why you (not to be interested) in horse-racing?  
Because I'm afraid of horses.
6. Why Edward (not to like) politics?  
Because he is keen on the theatre.

### Exercise 2. Make up your own sentences according to the model.

**Read the following text, translate it into your native language and discuss it in the classroom.**

## QUEEN ELIZABETH II

At present the British Royal family is headed by Queen Elizabeth II. When the Queen was born on the 21<sup>st</sup> of April 1926, her grandfather, King George

V was on the throne and her uncle was his heir. The death of her grandfather and the abdication of her uncle brought her father to the throne as King George VI.

As a child she studied constitutional history and law as well as art and music. In addition she learned to ride and acquired her enthusiasm for horses. As she grew older she began to take part in public life, making her first broadcast at the age 14.

The marriage of the young Princess Elizabeth to Philip, Duke of Edinburgh took place in November 1947. She came to the throne after her father's death in 1952 and was crowned in Westminster Abbey in June 1953.

The Queen's only sister, Princess Margaret, Countess of Snowdon is well-known for her charity work.

Among Queen Elizabeth's many duties are the regular visits she makes to foreign countries and especially those of the Commonwealth, whose interests and welfare are very important to her.

The Queen's husband, Duke of Edinburgh served in the Royal Navy. He takes a great deal of interest in industry.

The Queen's heir is Charles, Prince of Wales, who was born in 1948, married Lady Diana Spencer and has got two children, Prince William and Prince Harry. The Prince of Wales is well-known as a keen promoter of British interests.

In recent years he has become outspoken on such controversial topics as modern architecture, violence in films and on television and the standard of English teaching in schools. His wife Diana Princess of Wales won the affection of many people by her modesty, shyness and beauty. Unfortunately, she died in a car accident in August, 1997.

The Queen's other children are Princess Anne (1950), Prince Andrew (1960) and Prince Edward (1964). Anne, Princess Royal, has acquired a reputation for being arrogant, but in recent years has become quite popular with the general public.

Prince Andrew, Duke of York served in the Royal Navy. He married Miss Sarah Ferguson and has got two daughters.

Prince Edward is keen on the theatre. He is pursuing a career with a theatrical company.

The Queen is widely known for her interests in horses and horse-racing. She is now president of the Save of the Children Fund, Chancellor of the University of London and carries out many public engagements.

### **Vocabulary. Translate and learn the words by heart.**

1. throne
2. heir

3. abdication
4. enthusiasm
5. to make one's broadcast
6. duke
7. to crown
8. welfare
9. the Royal Navy
10. keen promoter
11. outspoken
12. controversial
13. charity work

**Discussion. Questions for discussion on the text.**

1. By whom is the British royal family headed at present?
2. How did she come to the throne and when was the Queen Elizabeth crowned?
3. What did she study as a child?
4. Who is the Queen's husband and where did he serve?
5. What does Philip, Duke of Edinburgh take a great interest in?
6. Who did Prince Charles marry?
7. What is Prince Charles interested in?
8. What are the names of the Queen's other children?

**Exercise 1. Find out whether these statements true or false.**

1. Queen Elizabeth II is the granddaughter of King George VI.
2. The Queen has got 4 children –two sons and two daughters.
3. Charles, Prince of Wales, was born in 1948 and he is the heir of Queen Elizabeth II.
4. Charles married Lady Diana Spencer and they live together nowadays too.
5. Save the Children Funds president is Charles, Prince of Wales.
6. Elizabeth II visited many foreign countries especially countries of Commonwealth as her duty.

**Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences using the active words of the text.**

1. Prince Andrew, Duke of York, served as a helicopter pilot in the.....
2. Charles, Prince of Wales was a keen ..... in the standard of English teaching in schools.

3. The Queen Elizabeth was the .... of British Empire and she came to... in 1952 after her father's death.
4. She got married to Philip, .... Of Edinburgh in 1947.
5. Her uncle's... brought King George VI to the throne.
6. King George VI has got 2 daughters Eliza and Margaret. And his little daughter is well-known for her.... work.
7. Queen Elizabeth was ... in Westminster Abbey in June 1953.
8. Charles, Prince of Wales has become ..... on Controversial topics as violence in films and on TV.

**Exercise 3. Find out the names of children of the Royal family and add it to a family tree and make up your own family tree.**

King George VI – his wife Elizabeth I

their children

Elizabeth II Margaret

queen her husband Philip (Duke of Edinburgh)

They have got four children

1 son	2 daughter	3 son	4 son
.....(1948)	.....(1950)	.....(1960)	.....(1964)
Prince of Wales	Princess	Prince of York	Prince

his wife  
Lady Diana Spencer

his wife  
Miss Sarah Ferguson

2 children (sons)

2children (daughters)?

1 son 2son 1 daughter  
Prince William Prince Harry

2 daughter

**Exercise 5 Fill in the blanks with one of the following prepositions given in the box.**

about, from, to, for, with, in, on.

1. The woman you gave the book ... is my aunt.
2. The novel which we talked ... is being made into a movie.
3. The company I work ... doesn't believe in pay raises.



4. The team I play soccer ... is practicing this afternoon.
5. Please don't lock the classroom I want to teach ... .
6. The couple you went out ... last night called today.
7. The teacher I borrowed the book ... wants it back.
8. I have a list of people I should write ... .
9. I am going to meet the woman I practice French ... .
10. We just bought the couch you are sitting ... .

**Exercise 7. Learn the dialogue by heart.**

**Dialogue 1**

Malika: Ann, do you know why Diana was the most famous woman in the world?

Ann: Why not, she was such a lovely lady, she was a kind and simple woman.

Malika: But everybody loved her.

Ann: Yes, you are right. Everybody loved her for her sincerity.

Malika: Diana won the hearts of millions not only in the country but in foreign countries too, didn't she?

Ann: It goes without saying. She helped people. She wanted to give them a part of her soul, to make them happy.

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Pair work.**

Speak about Royal family.

**Exercise 2. Make up a dialogue with your partner about:**

1. Elizabeth II
2. Prince Charles

**Exercise 3. Fill in this box.**

The things I know about her (him)    The things I want to know about her (him)

1. She is the daughter of King.	1. How old is she?
2.	2.
3.	3.
4.	4.
5.	5.
6.	6.
7.	7.

#### Exercise 4. Learn the poem by heart

Fly like a bird, Soar high in love  
Open your heart, let your love grow  
Winter days have, all passed away  
Eternal spring comes today

The beauty of life filling my soul  
Freeing my heart how my love grows  
The joy that I feel words can't say,  
Eternal spring comes today

#### Writing

**Make up a story using the proverb "Tastes differ" using the following words.**

Queen Elizabeth II, Royal, Navy, her, to be keen on, third son, company, Edward, 1964, theatrical, to be born, career, Marines, to be interested in, to leave.

**Exercise 5. Translate the following proverbs and use them in your situations in writing.**

1. Every man is the architect of his own fortunes.
2. Tastes differ.

**Text for pleasure reading.**

**Diana the People's Princess.**

### Lesson 3

#### MIRZO ULUGBEK

1394–1449

#### I. Warming up



**Exercise 1. Discuss these questions**

1. What science studies the stars?
2. Is it the picture of observatory? Where is it situated?
3. Who constructed this observatory?
4. What do you know of Samarkand?
5. Ulugbek is a statesman, isn't he?

## Vocabulary.

astronomer  
observatory  
mathematician  
table of stars  
statesman (men)

## Grammar Practice

Word formation by means of affixation- suffixation and prefixation.

Affixation consists of adding a suffix or a prefix to a stem of a definite part of speech.

### 1. Noun forming suffix - tion, - sion, - ation, - ion:

e.g. to attract – attraction  
to imagine – imagination  
to contribute – contribution  
to confess – confession

### 2. Prefixes denoting negation in-, im-, il-, ir:

e.g. in + sincere – insincere  
im + patient – impatient  
il + literate – illiterate  
ir + regular – irregular

**Exercise 1. Distinguish the following couples of verbs. Read and translate them into your native language. Make sentences with them.**

To re-cover- recover, to re-create – recreate, to re-cede – recede, to re-collect – recollect, to re-count- recount, to re-form- reform, to re-join- rejoin, to re-pay- repay, to re-sign – resign.

**Exercise 2. Insert in-, ir-, il-, im-, State your reasons for putting a certain variant of the prefix.**

1. The opposition became ... effective. 2. Tom lay awake and waited in restless ...patience.

3. Martin Eden nodded. He had caught a glimpse of the apparently ...limitable vistas of knowledge. 4. She died of an ...curable illness. 5. An even deeper ...mobility settled on Page's face. 6. He had always been ...religious, scoffing good-naturedly at the sky-pilots and their ..mortality of the soul.

**Exercise 3. Read the following text, translate it into your native language and discuss it in the classroom.**

## MIRZO ULUGBEK (1394–1449)

Mukhammad Taragay Ulugbek is considered to be one of the most prominent astronomers and mathematicians of the fifteenth century. Mirzo Ulugbek, Great Temur's grandson, made immeasurable contribution to the development of not only Medieval Mavorounnahr but also of the whole world. He made Samarkand famous as one of the leading cities of the Islam civilization. In 1424 Ulugbek built a madrasa, an institution of higher learning, where astronomy was taught. Later, namely in 1428, he began the construction of a magnificent three-level observatory in Samarkand. The Observatory, which was circular in shape, was over 50 metres in diameter and 35 meters high. Among the instruments specially constructed for the Observatory was a quadrat so large that part of the ground had to be removed to allow it to fit in the Observatory.

In 1437 Ulugbek, who was also Qori-person who can recite Qur'an by heart, published his most famous and enduring work, a new catalogue of stars entitled "**Zidji Djadid Sultani**". In it he revisited the positions and magnitudes of stars observed by Ptolomy. He found many errors in the computations by Ptolomy. Ulugbek's work included a diverse collection of observations and computations, the position of the fixed stars, the course of the stars, and the knowledge of time. Mirzo Ulugbek also computed the length of the year as 365 days 5 hours 49 minutes 15 seconds. In addition, he prepared Tables of Planetary Motions, which were very popular and in demand throughout the astronomical community. The prominent astronomer studied the yearly movements of the five bright planets: Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus and Mercury. His data are still considered to be very accurate. In 1437 he also compiled a star catalogue giving the positions of 992 stars. His compilation of table of sine and tangents at one-degree intervals are accurate to eight decimal places.

Besides, Ulugbek is considered to compile the first new star map.

### **Vocabulary: Translate and learn by heart**

to be considered-  
immeasurable-  
contribution-  
civilization-  
institution-  
circular (in shape) –  
enduring work-  
catalogue of stars-  
computation-

observation-  
fixed stars-  
compilation-

## Discussion

### Questions for discussion on the text.

1. What was Ulugbek? When did he live and where?
2. What field of science was he interested in?
3. What did he construct in Samarkand which remained till now?
4. How is the new catalogue of stars called and who was the author of it?
5. How many days are there in one year? Who computed it accurately?
6. Was the map of stars done by Ulugbek? Who else did it?
7. What do you know of Ulugbek as a statesman?
8. How long did he govern the state?

### Exercise 1. Find out whether these statements true or false.

1. Mukhammad Taragay Ulugbek compiled a new catalogue of stars.
2. He couldn't find anything wrong in Ptolomy's computation of stars.
3. Ulugbek studied the yearly movements only of the earth but not the other planets.
4. During the rule of government by Ulugbek Samarkand became one of the leading cities of the Islam civilization.
5. Mirzo Ulugbek computed the length of a year as 366 or 367 days.
6. The Observatory of Ulugbek was circular in shape.

### Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences using the active words of the text.

1. Mirzo Ulugbek made great ..... to the development of not only Ma-  
vourounahr but also of the whole world.
2. In 1437 he published the most famous new ..... of stars which is  
called "Zidji Djadid Sultani".
3. The prominent astronomer studied the yearly movements of the five  
bright ..... Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus and Mercury.
4. Ulugbek compiled the first new.....
5. He constructed a magnificent ..... in Samarkand.
6. The .....of the Observatory was over 50 meters and the hight was 35  
meters.
7. The length of a year was 365 days 5 hours 49 minutes 15 seconds  
according to Ulugbek's .....
8. Samarkand became famous as one of the leading cities of Islam.....

**Exercise 3. Find a noun which can make an expression with the words from the text.**

1. a new catalogue of
2. position of
3. magnitudes of
4. fixed
5. new map of
6. the course

**Exercise 5. Find synonyms to the following words.**

- |                 |                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 1. circular     | a. lasting            |
| 2. magnificent  | b. social development |
| 3. construction | c. organization       |
| 4. civilization | d. splendid           |
| 5. institution  | e. round              |
| 6. enduring     | f. building           |

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.

**Exercise 7. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate prepositions.**

### What is the Milky Way?

.... a clear night you can see pale white path ... light that stretches across the sky. It is what we call the Milky Way. It is the light .... the billions of stars that make up the Milky Way Galaxy – the star system ... which our sun belongs. If we could view it ... far enough away, the Milky Way Galaxy would look like a great spiraling disk ... most ... the stars ... the center and our sun near the edge. When we look ... the Milky Way, we are looking ..... the deepest and densest part .... the Galaxy. We see so many stars, they seem ... make a continuous path ... light.

**Exercise 8. Choose the sentence contradicting the others.**

- A. In the afternoon he was tired and hungry and stopped at the inn.
- B. A rich man came to that place and began to tie his horse to the same tree.
- C. One day a poor man was riding along the road.
- D. He sat down to have his dinner.
- E. The poor man tied his horse to a tree.

**Exercise 9. Choose the right order to make up a story.**

1. The morning will be spent playing with the new toys
2. Afterwards there is Christmas pudding to be eaten.
3. Traditionally, English children hang a stocking at the end of the bed on Christmas Eve.
4. Then comes lunch, often with turkey or goose as the main dish.
5. In the morning they check whether the stocking has been filled with small toys.

A. 3 5 4 1 2

D. 1 2 3 4 5

C. 5 4 3 2 1

B. 3 5 1 4 2

E. 3 5 2 1 4

**Exercise 10. Choose the sentence contradicting the others**

**ROYAL OBSERVATORY**

- A. The Royal Observatory, now Britain's oldest government- financed scientific institution.
- B. The Observatory was founded at Greenwich in 1675.
- C. The Greenwich site was chosen and the first buildings were designed by Sir Christopher Wren.
- D. The Observatory' buildings were built of second hand bricks on the site of an old furt.
- E. Flamsteed was appointed as the first astronomer of this Observatory, without assistance, on a salary of 100 per year.

**Exercise 11. Choose the sentence expressing the main idea of the text.**

**JAMES CLERK MAXWELL**

1. In 1860 he became a professor of physics and astronomy at King's College, London.
2. When did Maxwell take great interest in mathematics and optics at the University?
3. After school he entered the University of that city.
4. Then he attended in to the University of Cambridge and graduated from it in 1854
5. James Clerk Maxwell, a great physicist and mathematician was born in Edinburgh, Scotland on November 13, 1831.

A. 23451

B. 45231

C. 54321

D. 53421

E. 23145

## Speaking. Pair work

### Puzzles

1. Can you complete the sentences with missing words?  
They are pronounced alike but spelt differently.  
Don't come..... early. Come ....lunch about ....o'clock.
2. Can you complete the following well-known sayings?  
As cunny as a....  
As quiet as a.....  
As brave as a.....

### Writing

1. Change dialogue 1 into indirect speech paying attention to the sequence of tenses.
2. Write a short story about Ulugbek's childhood.
3. Ulugbek's contribution to the world science
  - a) astronomy
  - b) mathematics
4. Historical monuments of Samarkand and Ulugbek's contribution to it.

## Lesson 4

### AMIR TIMUR IS A FAMOUS STATESMAN

#### 1. Warming up.

**Exercise 1. Look at the pictures and match them with the words given in the box and try to guess their names.**

**Vocabulary. Translate and learn the following dictionary by heart.**



Amir Temur

monument -  
mausoleum -  
statesman -  
Shakhi Zinda -  
Gur Emir -  
capital -  
establish -

#### Discussion.

**Questions for discussion on the picture.**

1. What city is shown in this picture?
2. Name these historical places of the city and what do you know about them?
3. Who is the founder of this city as a capital?



4. What do you know about these historical monuments?

**Exercise 2. Fill in the dialogue with the words given.**

**Dialogue 1.**

A. What city is shown in this picture?

B. It is ..... You know it was a ..... of Amir Temur's.....

A. Oh, yes. You are quite right. What is Samarkand famous for?

B. It is famous for its historical .....

A. Do you know their names?

B. Certainly. They are Shakhi Zinda, Registan and ..... and so on.



Shakhi Zinda

**Grammar Practice.**

**Complex object**

**Model:** He wanted his country to be independent.

**Rule:** 1. Complex object is used after such verbs: **to want, to demand, to expect** and so on.

2. After such verbs come a noun in the Common Case+ infinitive with the particle "to" e.g. I want Ann to go to the blackboard.

3. If after such verbs come a pronoun, it must be in the Objective Case+ infinitive with the particle "to" e.g. I want her to go to the blackboard.



Samarkand

4. But after such verbs: to hear, to see, to watch, to feel, to notice, to make, to let infinitive is used without particle “to” e.g. I watched him go to the blackboard.

**Exercise 1. Put the infinitive in the correct form.**

1. Amir Timur watched his uncle (to run away, run away) to Huroson.
2. He wanted his country (to be, be) a strong centralized state.
3. Amir Taragay felt his son (to be interested in, be interested in) military activities.
4. The scholar of Movorounnahr expected young Timur (know, to know) geography, history, astronomy and medicine very well.
5. As Timur was loyal to his country and his people, his uncle felt him (to go back, go back) to Shahrisabz.
6. Amir Timur respected all the nationalities and he demanded them (to respect, respect) the country’s law in its turn.

**Exercise 2. Find Complex Object in the following sentences and analyse the formation of them.**

1. The pupils expected the guide to show them all the exhibits of the museum.
2. Amir Temur wanted the soldiers to devote their lives to their country.
3. He demanded his people to follow the law of the country.
4. Amir Taragay wanted his son to protect his property.
5. The teacher demanded his pupils to visit the museum of Amir Temur.
6. He wanted Samarkand to be the city of unsurpassed beauty.
7. Amir Taragay expected his son to be a military leader.
8. Amir Temur wanted the historians to write about the real life.

**Read the following text, translate it into your native language, and discuss it in the classroom.**

**AMIR TIMUR IS A FAMOUS STATESMAN  
(1336–1405)**

**1. Early Life.**

The name of Amir Timur is known not only in Central Asia (Turon) but all over the world. He was a famous statesman, great military strategist and leader of the Uzbek people.

He was born on the 9 th of April 1336 at Kesh, better known as Shahr-isabz, “**The green city**”, situated some 50 miles south of Samarkand in modern Uzbekistan.

His father's name was Amir Taragay. He was an authoritative rich man, the head of the tribe of Barlas.

His mother was a clever and noble woman and her name was Teguna. Amir Timur was well educated as his family was rich.

At the age of twelve Timur began to rule over the servants who served in their house and he knew how to protect the property of his father and how to oversee it. At the age of twenty he had not only become an expert in manly outdoor exercises but had earned the reputation of being an attentive reader of the Qur'an. Like his father, he was a muslim and seems to have been influenced by Nakshbandi Sufism.

## **2. Military Leader.**

Timur was interested in military activities and state affairs. He spent much time in military training and getting a secular education. He came before the world as a military leader in 1358. He spent his whole life fighting against oppression, against the battle between the Khans and Beks.

Timur took part in campaigns in Transoxania with the khan of Chigatai, a descendant of Chenghis Khan. For Timur's military talent and authority the Mongol Khan Teghluk appointed him the governor of Shahrissabz. So Amir Timur came to power. And soon he conquered Khorosan at the head of a thousand horseman and then all of the Mavoraunnahr, establishing a strong centralized state uniting separate kingdoms into one strong government.

## **3. Amir Timur is a Great Statesman**

Amir Timur ruled and governed the country according to the law, following Islam and the rules of Shariat. And he also demanded his people to follow the law strictly. As leader he was interested in the life of common people. Amir Timur wanted the historians to write about the real life of the people.

The capital of Tamerlane's empire was Samarkand. He wanted it to be the city of unsurpassed beauty and so he did it.

Amir Timur ruled the country over 35 years from 1370 to 1405. He died in February 1405 at the age of 69 and he was buried in Samarkand in Gur Emir mausoleum.

In 1996 UNESCO decided to celebrate Amir Temur's 660 years anniversary. And there was a conference in Paris (France). I.A.Karimov delivered a speech at this conference.

### **Vocabulary. Translate and learn the following words by heart:**

military strategist

authoritative

noble  
property  
to oversee  
secular education  
oppression  
authority  
to appoint  
to conquer  
governor  
to govern  
law  
centralized state  
to unite  
unsurpassed  
to be buried  
according to

### **Discussion**

#### **Questions for discussion on the text.**

1. Why is Amir Timur known all over the world?
2. What do you know about his family?
3. How did he begin ruling and when?
4. What was he interested in and why?
5. How did he manage to finish the war between Khans and Becks?
6. How did Amir Timur conquer Mavoraunnahr?
7. How did Timur rule the country?
8. Why should the leader follow the law while ruling the country?
9. What city was the capital of Timur's Empire?
10. When did Amir Timur die and where was he buried?

#### **Exercise 1. Find out whether these statements true or false.**

1. Amir Timur is known only in Central Asia.
2. He ruled the country without any paying attention to any law.
3. Amir Timur established a strong centralized state.
4. Timur wasn't always interested in the life of common people.
5. Amir Timur ruled and governed the country over 35 years.
6. When Timur came to power, his aim was to establish a strong centralized state.

**Exercise 2. Form verbs from the following nouns.**

Noun	Verb
1. governor	
2. ruler	
3. protection	
4. writer	
5. leader	
6. conqueror	

**Exercise 3. Find the synonyms of the following words.**

1. to rule-to govern
2. near-close
3. famous-popular
4. authoritative-respectful

**Exercise 4. Find adjectives from the text to the following nouns which is given in line A and match line B.**

line A-nouns

- a. state
- b. people
- c. leader
- d. statesman
- e. woman
- f. affair
- g. education
- h. activity

line B -adj.

1. secular
2. famous
3. clever
4. military
5. great
6. centralized
7. common
8. state

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.

**Exercise 5. Complete the following sentences using active words from the text.**

1. Amir Timur's mother was a clever and .....woman.
2. He knew how to protect his father's .....
3. Timur was interested in..... activities and state affairs of the country.
4. He fought for..... of his country.
5. Samarkand was the capital of Tamerlane's .....
6. Amir Timur ruled and ..... The country according to the law.
7. He came to power and ..... all of the Movoraunnahr.
8. Amir Timur ..... a strong centralized state.

**Exercise 6. Find the antonyms of the following words.**

1. near-far from
2. rich-poor
3. strong-weak
4. military-civil
5. clever-stupid
6. much-little
7. real-unreal
8. beautiful-ugly

**Exercise 7. Paraphrase the following sentences using the active words instead of underlined one's.**

1. As soon as Amir Timur came to power he set up a strong centralized state. (to establish)
2. It is remarkable to say that Timur never claimed for himself the title of Khan. (notable)
3. He wanted his capital to be very beautiful. (unsurpassed beauty).
4. Timur made a great help to the art of Turon. (contribution)
5. He ruled the Country over 35 years. (governed)
6. Mongol invaders captured Huroson. (conquered)

**Exercise 8. Insert an article where it is necessary.**

..... next thirty years he spent in various wars and expeditions. Timur not only consolidated his rule at home by .... subjugation of his foes, but sought extension of territory by encroachments upon ... lands of foreign potentates. His conquests to..west and north-west led him among... Mongols of ... Caspian sea and to... banks of ... Ural and ... Volga; those to... south and south-west encompassed almost every province in Persia, including Baghdad, Karabala and Kurdistan.

**Exercise 9. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate preposition.**

1. The man you work .... has been in business for years.
2. The books they were interested ..... were lost in the fire.
3. The tools you work .... Must be in good condition.
4. The parking space we drove .... is reserved for the handicapped.
5. The stairs you came .... need to repaired.
6. You should try to remember the names of people you are introduced ...
7. Here are the books we just looked through.
8. The highway you had to drive .... is full of potholes

## Speaking

**Exercise 1. Speak on the following topics and make up a dialogue with your partner.**

1. Amir Timur's early life.
2. Amir Timur - military leader
3. Amir Timur's rise to power
4. Amir Timur's period of expansion
5. Amir Timur's contribution to the art.

**Exercise 2. Pair work.**

1. Amir Timur is a great statesman.
2. Conversation between Amir Timur and scholars.
3. Conversation between common people and Timur.

**Exercise 3. Retell this joke in indirect speech.**

### Joke

#### A Talkative Man

- Have you any family, madam? (A talk of ative passanger to a lady who is in the same compartment)

- Yes, sir. One son.

- Indeed. Does he smoke?

- No, he doesn't.

- So much the better. Tobacco is a poison. Does he belong to a club?

- Oh, no! He doesn't.

- Then I congratulate you. Your son must be a very good young man. How old is he?

- Four months today.

## Writing

**Exercise 1. Write "Joke" in indirect speech paying attention to sequence of tenses.**

**Exercise 2. Write an essay on:**

1. Amir Timur created a great Kingdom.
2. Timur is a famous statesman.
3. Timur is a great military leader.
4. Timur's childhood.

## Lesson 5

### MARTIN LUTHER KING (1929–1968)

#### Warming up.

**Words:**

1. The USA-the United States of America.
2. Stripes
3. Stars
4. States
5. Organization
6. Ku-Klux-Klan
7. Racial discrimination



A. Lincoln

**Phonetic Drill. Train the pronunciation of the following words consulting the dictionary.**

1. the USA
2. flag
3. stripes
4. stars
5. states
6. organization
7. Ku-Klux-Klan
8. racial discrimination

**Discussion****Questions for discussion.**

1. What is the official name of the country?
2. What do you know about its flag?
3. What kind of organization is the Ku-Klux-Klan?
4. Who is in the last picture?

**Exercise 2. Fill in the dialogue with the words given.****Dialogue**

- A. Where is the USA situated?  
B. In the North of America.  
A. Do you know its.....?  
B. Yes, of course. There are 13 stripes and 50 .....on it.  
A. What does it mean?



B. 13....mean the former states of the USA and 50 stars mean the ....of the USA.

A. When did it get its independence?

B. On the 4 th of July in 1776.

### **Grammar practice**

**Prefixation-negative prefixes precede the word giving them negative meaning.**

**Negative prefixes:** im-; ir-; il-; in-; non-; un-; dis-;

e.g. un+known

dis+obey

**Exercise 1. Find the words from the text formed by the way of prefixes and suffixes. Then analyze them stating whether they are suffixes or prefixes.**

**Exercise 2. Analyze the following words and find out suffixes and prefixes.**

Leader, movement, effectively, ability, demonstrations, internationally, nonviolent, racism, discrimination, employment, education, injustice, tombstone, birthday, racist, finally.

**Read the following text, translate it into your native language and discuss it in the classroom.**

### **MARTIN LUTHER KING (1929–1968)**

Martin Luther King, a black American, was born on the 15 th of January, 1929 in Atlanta. He was the main leader of the civil rights movement in the United States during the 1950's and 1960's. He had a magnificent speaking ability, which enabled him to effectively express the demands of black Americans for social justice. King's eloquent pleas won the support of millions of people blacks and whites, and made him internationally famous. He won the 1964 Nobel Peace Prize for leading nonviolent civil rights demonstrations.

M. King expanded struggle against racism and discrimination. And soon afterwards president Kennedy proposed a wide ranging civil rights bill to Congress.

The Civil Rights Act of 1964 prohibited racial discrimination in public places and called for equal opportunity in employment and education.

M. Luther King was arrested and jailed several times while protesting against injustice and discrimination. From a Birmingham jail he wrote: "Injustice anywhere is a threat of justice everywhere".

In spite of King's stress on nonviolence, he often became the target of violence. White racists threw rocks at him in Chicago and bombed his home in Montgomery. Finally, violence ended King's life at the age of 39. On April 4, 1968 King was shot and killed. People throughout the world mourned King's death. He was buried in Atlanta. On King's tombstone are the words: "Free at last, free at last, thank God Almighty, I am free at last."

M.L.King became only the second American whose birthday is observed as a national holiday. The first was George Washington, the nation's first President. Martin Luther King wrote five books about civil rights.

#### 1. King's Civil Rights activity.

King's civil rights activities began with a protest of Montgomery's segregated bus system in 1955. That year a black passenger named Rosa Parks was arrested for disobeying a city law requiring that blacks give up their seats. Black leaders in Montgomery urged blacks to boycott (refuse to use) the city's buses. Black people formed an organization to run the boycott and asked King to serve as president.

In his first speech as leader of the boycott King told his people "First and foremost, we are American citizens. We are not here advocating violence.... The only weapon that we have... is the weapon of protest". And in 1956 the US Supreme Court ordered Montgomery to provide equal, integrated seating on public buses. Boycott's success won King national fame and he became the symbol of Southern black's new efforts to fight racial injustice.

### **Phonetic Drill. Train to pronounce these new words consulting the dictionary.**

civil rights -	discrimination -
movement -	racism -
enable -	to prohibit -
social justice -	injustice -
pleas -	to mourn -
eloquent -	tomb stone -
violence -	equal -
nonviolence -	employment -
jail -	

### **Discussion**

#### **Questions for discussion on the text.**

1. What is Martin Luther King's name connected with?
2. What are the demands of black Americans?
3. Why is Martin Luther King famous not only in the USA but all over the world?

4. What did the Civil Rights Act prohibit and when?
5. Why was Martin Luther King arrested?
6. How did the white racists treat Martin Luther King?
7. What was written on King's tombstone? And what does it mean?
8. How did the black and white people of America honour him?

**Exercise 1. Find out whether these statements true or false.**

1. The white people of America didn't support the civil rights movement led by Martin Luther King in the country.
2. George Washington and Martin Luther King's birthdays are celebrated as a national holiday in America.
3. During the meetings and demonstrations King's eloquent speech won the support of millions of people of America.
4. Martin Luther King hadn't any speaking ability to express his opinion.
5. His eloquent speech made King internationally famous not only in America but all over the world.
6. Black people of America threw stones and bombed Martin Luther King's house and killed him.

**Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences using active words of the text.**

1. Martin Luther King was the leader of the civil rights ....in the USA.
2. Struggle against racism and ..... was expanded in America in 1950's and 1960's.
3. Martin Luther won ... Peace Prize for his activity for the black people's rights in the USA.
4. People throughout the world.... King's death.
5. ....ended his life.
6. The Civil Rights Act called for.... rights in employment and education.
7. Martin Luther King was .... several times while protesting against racial discrimination.
8. "Free at last, free at last...." were written on King's.....
9. Martin Luther King's .... activity began in 1955.
10. Boycott's success won King national ...in the fight against racial.....

**Exercise 3. Give the opposites of the words adding negative prefixes.**

1. equal -
2. employment -
3. violence -
4. advantage -
5. justice -

6. known -
7. obey -
8. armament -

**Exercise 4. Give as many synonyms as possible to the following words.**

1. famous -
2. magnificent -
3. main -
4. leader -

**Exercise 5. Paraphrase the following words using active ones.**

1. Rosa Parks was arrested because she didn't obey the city law.
2. Martin Luther King fought against those who thought that they were superior to the blacks.
3. Civil rights act of 1964 called for equal opportunity to work and to study.
4. Martin Luther King was jailed while protesting against unfair.
5. Black people formed an organization and asked King to lead the boycott.

**Exercise 6. Fill in blanks with prepositions or adverbs.**

1. Queen Elizabeth makes a regular visits ...foreign countries.
2. She visited...the USA, Russia, Germany and so on..
3. When Newton was sitting ...the garden his attention was drawn ...the fall...an apple.
4. His discoveries are very important....the modern science.
5. How many days are there ....one year according ...Ulugbek's computing.
6. Ulugbek began the construction ....a Observatory....Samarkand.
7. Martin Luther King expanded struggle .....racism ....social justice.
8. Racists threw stones ...him ...Chicago and bombed ...home....Montgomery.

**Exercise 7. Insert articles where necessary.**

1. It all happened on ... bright and sunny morning 1955 in.... bus.
2. That year ..... black passenger named Rosa Parks was arrested for disobeying .... city law.
3. .... Lake Baikal is .... deepest lake in .... world.
4. .... Sahara is a great desert in .... North Africa, extending from ... Atlantic Ocean to .... Nile.
5. ....Elbrus is .... highest peak in ..... Europe.
6. Martin Luther King is ... main leader of ..... civil rights movement in .... USA

## Speaking

### I. Role play. Stage the dialogue:

#### Dialogue 1

A: Bob, do you know anything about Martin L.King?

B: Oh, yes. He is the leader of civil rights movement in America.

A: He belongs to black Americans, doesn't he?

B: You are quite right. He is the fighter for social justice for black Americans.

A: I heard he won Nobel Prize.

B: Yes, he won it in 1964 for his civil rights activity.

### II. Role play

#### Dialogue 2

A: Jack, do you know that Martin Luther King had a magnificent speaking ability?

B: Yes, he was an eloquent speaker.

A: You know, his eloquent speech impressed the whites and the blacks and made him internationally famous.

B: But I think King expanded struggle against racism which made him famous.

A: Jack, you know both of us are right.

### III. Guess the answer.

1. What goes without moving from its place?

2. We are half a tram and half a bus;

Will you come and ride in us?

3. What is it that never was, never will be and yet is?

4. What is that which everybody has seen, but can never see again?

5. What is always following the train? It can't be seen, and the train can't go without it.

### IV. Round table discussion.

1. Nobel Prize.

2. Racial discrimination.

3. Ku-Klux-Klan organization.

## Writing

**Exercise 1. Change dialogue 1,2 into indirect speech and write it down.**

**Mind sequence of tenses. Answering the question: "What did he (she) say?"**

**Exercise 2. Write about:**

1. Martin L.King's Civil Rights Activity.

2. M.King is the winner of Nobel Peace Prize.
3. The Civil Rights Act prohibited racial discrimination.

**Exercise 3. Write about this text.**

**About a well-known man**

When Conan Doyle arrived in Boston, he was at once recognized by the cabman whose cab he had engaged. When he was about to pay his fare, the cabman said:

“If you please, sir, I should prefer a ticket to your lecture”.

Conan Doyle laughed. “Tell me,” he said, “how you knew who I was and I’ll give you tickets for your whole family.”

“Thank you, sir”, was the answer.

“On the side of your travelling-bag is your name Conan Doyle”.

**Grammar Practice.**

**Article before the names of subjects, the names of rivers and historical documents.**

e.g. No article  
is used:

X history  
X geography  
X mathematics

Definite article  
is used:

the Potomac River  
the Amu Darya

Definite article  
is used:

the Constitution  
the Warsaw Peace Treaty

**Exercise 1. Fill in articles where necessary.**

1. Mark Twain worked as a pilot of ..... Mississippi River.
2. While studying Washington liked .... Mathematics .....History and .....Geography.
3. His family moved to .....plantation which lay about 50 miles up ....Potomac River.
4. Abraham preferred learning to working in ....fields. This led to ....difficult relationship with his father who was just ...opposite.
5. After.....new Constitution was submitted to...states for ratification and became legally operative, George Washington was unanimously elected president. (1789)
6. On May 1787, Washington headed ...Virginia delegation to ....Constitutional Convension in Philadelphia and was unanimously elected presiding officer.

## Exercise 2. Paraphrase the sentences using Complex Object.

**Model:** Ann will arrive next Friday. We are expecting her.  
We are expecting Ann to arrive next Friday.

1. Her daughter loses much time talking. Mother doesn't want it.
2. Nelly will come by the morning plane. We expect her.
3. They are going on an excursion. You must join them. I want it.
4. The goods will arrive on Monday. The company is expecting them.
5. Bill you must promise to come to my place as early as possible. I want it.
6. I want the book back, Ann. Bring it tomorrow.

## Exercise 3. Find Complex Object in these sentences and analyse the formation of them.

1. My father wants me to study better.
2. Our family expected Nick to arrive at the weekend.
3. I like you to play the piano.
4. Washington's father wanted him to study in England.
5. I would like my mother to come as soon as possible.
6. His mother didn't want Washington to be away from home for long time.
7. Everybody expected Ann to marry Jack.
8. Nick's mother hates him to miss his lessons.

## Exercise 4. Fill in the blanks with an appropriate prepositions.

1. The town he comes ... is very small.
2. The door you came .... is only for use during a fire.
3. The woman, this book was written ... , died a long time ago.
4. The movie is being made from the book we talked ... yesterday.
5. What kind of fuel do you heat your house ....
6. The music you wanted to listen ... on the record player.
7. He is the one you should feel sorry...
8. What college do you want to go ...

## Exercise 5. Read the following text, translate it into native language and discuss it in the classroom.

### GEORGE WASHINGTON (1732–1799)

George Washington won a lasting place in American history as the "Father of His Country". For nearly 20 years, he guided his country much as a father cares for a growing child.

George Washington was born in Virginia on February 22, 1732. When he was three, his family moved to the large undeveloped plantation that was later called Mount Vernon which lay about 50 miles up the Potomac River.

He began going to school when the family moved to Ferry Farm. His favourite subject was mathematics. He studied enough history and geography to know something of the outside world. His father wanted him to study in England. But unfortunately he died when he was eleven. After his father's death, George's mother did not want him to be away from home for long time. Washington inherited a good mind and a strong body and by the time he finished school at the age 15 George could keep business account.

In three important ways Washington helped to shape the beginning of the United States.

First, he commanded the Continental Army that won American independence from Great Britain in the Revolutionary War.

Second, Washington served as president of the convention that wrote the United States Constitution.

Third, he was the first man elected President of the United States.

By the summer of 1788 enough states had approved the Constitution so the government could be organized. Throughout the country, people linked Washington's name directly to the new Constitution. They took it for granted that he would be chosen as the first President.

In February, 1789 they unanimously elected Washington as a President. Taking office (April 30, 1789) in New York City, Washington acted carefully. After becoming the President, he successfully solved many problems in turning the plans of the Constitution into a working government. The people used to say about Washington "First in War, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen".

Washington was reelected the president in 1792. But by march 1797, when Washington left office, the country's financial system was well established. Washington refused to run for a third term. He preferred to spend his last years in happy retirement at Mount Vernon. In mid-December, Washington died at his estate on December 14, 1799.

**Exercise 6. Complete the following sentences using the active words from the text.**

1. After his brother's death George Washington.....the Mount Vernon estate.
2. He spent his early years on the family.....along the Potomac River.
3. In 1735 his family ...to the large ....plantation that was called Mount Vernon.
4. After becoming President George Washington successfully ....many problems.
5. Many states had...the Constitution of 1788.
6. In 1789 they.....elected George Washington as a president.
7. George Washington refused .....for the third term.



8. In 1798 he preferred to spend his last years in happy ....at Mount Vernon.
9. George Washington was.....president in 1792.
10. At the age of 15 George could keep .....

**Exercise 7. Paraphrase the following sentences using active words.**

1. George Washington ruled the government from 1789 till 1797. (run the government)
2. In 1797 G.Washington went on pension and decided to return to his estate Mount Vernon. (retired)
3. When he was three the family moved to a backward plantation which is called Mount Vernon. (undeveloped)
4. In 1789 when he was elected as a president of the country he settled many problems. (solved)
5. He began going to school when the family went to Ferry Farm. (moved to)
6. G.Washington took after his father having strong body and a good mind. (inherited)

**Exercise 8. Find antonyms to the following words.**

1. developed -
2. approve -
3. fortunately -
4. to be away -
5. up to river -
6. dependence -
7. many -
8. much -
9. final -
10. carefully -
11. war -

**Exercise 9. Find synonyms to the following words.**

1. to retire (to be retired) -
2. to take smth for granted -
3. to end -
4. to solve the problem -
5. to rule the country -
6. hardships -
7. nearly -
8. to move to -

## Speaking

### Role play.

#### Exercise 1. Stage the dialogue.

##### Dialogue 1

Nick: You know Ann, Washington inherited a good mind and a strong body from his parents, didn't he?

Ann: Yes, you are quite right. He was strong and clever. So that he could keep business accounts at the age of 15.

Nick: Who commanded the army during the Revolutionary War in America.

Ann: Why don't you know, it was G. Washington who won American Independence from Great Britain.

#### Exercise 2.

**Speak about:** The people used to say about Washington: "First in War, first in peace and first in the hearts of his countrymen"

**Speak about:** 1. How did Washington help to shape the United States as a government.

2. Topics:

1. Early life
2. Education
3. Elected President
4. Running the government
5. Retirement.

#### Writing: Write topics about Washington.

- Topics:
1. Early life
  2. Education
  3. Elected President
  4. Running the government
  5. Retirement.

#### Role play. Guess the answer.

1. Why are teeth like verbs?
2. What is white outside and yellow inside?
3. What goes to every town and relates its message to anyone?
4. What is the longest word in the English language?

#### Retell the joke in indirect speech.

**Model:** What did mother ask her daughter ?

Mother asked daughter if she had stopped crying.

#### Joke

Mother: Well, my girl. Have you stopped crying?

Girl: No, I haven't. I am only resting.

---

---

## UNIT 6.

### MUSEUMS, MONUMENTS, EXHIBITIONS

### BRITISH MUSEUMS

#### Lessons 1

##### Warming up

**Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words.**

1. museum [mju:ziəm]
2. sculpture [skʌlptʃə]
3. gallery [ˈgæləri]
4. drawings [ˈdrɔ:ɪŋz]
5. paintings [ˈpeɪntɪŋz]
6. art [ɑ:t]
7. science [ˈsaɪəns]
8. history [ˈhɪstəri]
9. wax [wæks]

##### Discussion

**Describe the pictures using active words.**

1. What is a museum?
2. What kinds (types) of museums do you know?
3. What are the famous world museums?
4. What museums of Tashkent have you visited?
5. What can you say about the British museum?
6. If you want to see the exhibits of animal and plant life, where will you go?
7. How is the museum called where you have a chance to see a lot of famous people, but you can't speak to them?



The British museum Art Gallery

## Grammar

Madam Tussaud's (museum) is situated in Baker Street, London

The words house, office, shop, café, restaurant are often omitted with nouns in the Possessive Case if they function as adverbial modifier of place.

1. We are invited to dinner to my friend's (house).
2. Every morning she goes to the baker's (shop) to buy fresh rolls.
3. There were a lot of people at the doctor's (office).
4. Peter went to the tailor's (shop) to have his coat shortened.
5. You should go to the barber's (shop). Your hair badly needs cutting.

### Exercise 2. Answer the questions using suitable nouns in the Possessive Case.

E.g. Where should you go to have your sick tooth pulled out? We should go to the dentist's.

1. Where can you have your dress altered if it is long?
2. You have a very smart hair - do. Where have you done it?
3. We need some bread for supper. Shall I go to the \_\_\_?
4. What does he do? He sells meat at the \_\_\_.
5. Where did you spend your holiday? I spent my holiday at my \_\_\_.

### Exercise 3. Consult the dictionary and train the pronunciation of the active words.

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. unique      | 7. pamphlet     |
| 2. collections | 8. periodical   |
| 3. ceramics    | 9. display      |
| 4. medieval    | 10. valuable    |
| 5. Renaissance | 11. outstanding |
| 6. prints      | 12. notorious   |

## TEXT I

### THE BRITISH MUSEUM

There are many museums in London. One of the most famous is the British museum. Built in the middle of the 18<sup>th</sup> century, it is situated in Bloomsbury, a district in central London. It is a large, light grey building.

In the first place the British museum is a great library, one of the largest in the world, with more than 7 million books. By law a copy of every book, pamphlet, periodical including maps and music published in British must be kept at the British museum. Newspapers are kept in a separate building in another part of London.

In the second place the British museum is a great scientific institution, generally known as natural history museum.

Lastly the British museum has a wonderful art gallery. There are unique collections of sculptures, ceramics, drawings and paintings of the Egyptians, Greeks, Romans, Chinese, Japanese, Indians and many other peoples.

There is a unique collection of Italian drawings (Leonardo da Vinci), English and French prints and many other objects of art there.

In the first place – во первых – birinchidan
In the second place – во вторых – ikkinchidan

The lexical word **place** in such set expressions partially loses its semantic meaning and may not be translated. It is so called a desemantized word.

E.g. **In the first place** the room is dimly lit. **In the second place** it is a store house of unimagined treasure.

**Exercise 4. Make up two sentences of your own on each pattern.**

**Exercise 5. Define whether the statement false or true.**

E.g. 1. The British museum is the most famous one in London. – true

2. It has more than 8 or 9 million books. – false

1. By law a copy of every book, periodical published in the world must be kept at the British museum.

2. Newspapers are kept in some other buildings of the museum.

3. In the first place the British museum is a great library.

4. In the second place it is a great scientific institution.

5. The British museum has no art gallery.

6. It has collections of sculpture, drawings and paintings of the Egyptians, Greeks, Romans, Americans, Chinese, Japanese, Indians and many other peoples.

7. It is built in the middle of the 19<sup>th</sup> century.

8. There are unique collections of Italian drawings, English and French prints.

**Exercise 6. Speak on the 1<sup>st</sup> text using new words and expressions.**

**Exercise 7. Make up a dialogue between 2 visitors of the British museum.**

## TEXT II

### BRITISH MUSEUMS

The museum which presents modern masters of England and France is the Tate Gallery in Millbank. There are some fine examples of modern sculpture. Its collection of French Impressionists is marvelous.

The collection of the Applied Arts of all countries and periods you can find in the Victoria and Albert museum.

There is also the National Gallery in Trafalgar Square which has one of the best picture collections in the world. Here you can see the most valuable display of French paintings and, of course, the finest English paintings with Gainsborough, Turner, Constable and others.

Italian painting is displayed from the Medieval to the Renaissance. There are outstanding pictures of Roman, Dutch, Flemish and Spanish masters.

There is great treasure displayed in private collections all over the world. The Queen's collection is the most valuable among them.

But the best known and most visited waxwork exhibition in the world is Madam Tussaud's. More than 2/2 million people of every age and all nationalities come here every year for a – face – to – face meeting with a famous and infamous royalty, superstars, politicians and murderers. You can meet here wax figures of the royal family, great statesmen, writers, painters, singers, actors and actresses and notorious murderers.

Established in 1770, Madame Tussaud's has a unique and fascinating history. A visit to Madam Tussaud's is the closest meeting with our heroes and heroines, making it a unique and unforgettable experience.

#### Read and Remember

Gainsborough ['geinzbərə]

Turner ['tə:nə]

Constable [kənsteɪbl]

Madam Tussaud's [m'ædəmtəsɔ:z]

Renaissance [ri'neɪsəns]

#### Exercise 1. Answer the questions to the text.

1. Where can you find works of modern masters of England and France?
2. Which museum presents the applied arts of all countries and periods?
3. Where is the National Gallery situated?
4. Whose paintings can you see on display in the National Gallery?
5. What period of Italian painting is displayed in the National Gallery?
6. Whose collection of painting is the most valuable among private collections all over the world?

7. With whom can you meet face – to – face in the Madam Tussaud’s?
8. When and by whom was Madam Tussaud’s established?

**Exercise 2. Fill in the gaps with the suitable prepositions.**

1. The National Gallery is situated \_\_\_ Trafalgar Square.
2. The Tate Gallery is famous \_\_\_ the works of modern English and French masters.
3. The most valuable display \_\_\_ French and English paintings can be found \_\_\_ the National Gallery.
4. Italian painting is displayed \_\_\_ the medieval \_\_\_ the Renaissance.
5. The collection \_\_\_ the applied arts \_\_\_ all countries and periods can be seen in the Victoria and Albert museum.

**Exercise 3. Make up sentences using prompting words.**

1. to publish, periodical, unique, collection.
2. painting, drawing, printing, to display, waxwork.
3. valuable, outstanding, famous, pictures.

**Exercise 4. Insert a necessary word from the list below.**

1. The museum \_\_\_ presents modern masters of England and France is the Tate Gallery.
2. The National Gallery is the place \_\_\_ you can find the best picture collection of English paintings.
3. Everybody knows \_\_\_ the most visited waxwork exhibition is Madam Tussaud’s.
4. Do you like the picture \_\_\_ you have just bought?
5. I remember the time well \_\_\_ I first visited the Tretjakov Gallery.
6. Michelangelo is the famous Italian sculptor \_\_\_ made the statue of David.

which, when, where, that, who, that

**Exercise 5. Choose the right word.**

valuable, to value, valued, valueless, invaluable, valuables

1. Many \_\_\_ exhibits of the Hermitage were removed from Leningrad during the Great Patriotic War. (World War II)
2. Usually people \_\_\_ good heartedness, generosity of other people.
3. Most \_\_\_ people of the city take part in the peace demonstration.
4. The plan of the city was \_\_\_ for the tourists who came to London for the first time.

5. She was disappointed when she found out that her jewels were \_\_\_\_ .
6. She put her \_\_\_\_ into a box and put it away.

### Writing

#### Exercise 7. Choose the right word:

outstanding, famous, well – known, notorious

1. He is an \_\_\_\_ scientist in the field of physics.
2. The \_\_\_\_ English playwright William Shakespeare was born in 1564 in Stratford – upon – Avon.
3. His \_\_\_\_ plays are “Hamlet”, “Othello”, “King Lear”.
4. Chechen terrorists are \_\_\_\_ for their criminal actions in Beslan, Nalchik, Moscow and many other cities.

## Lesson 2

### ART GALLERIES AND MUSEUMS

A: Can you tell me, if there are many museums in London?

B: Quite a lot. The place I like best of all is the Victoria and Albert Museum. It's an exciting place, with paintings, sculpture, ceramics, musical instruments, and so on, all beautifully arranged in historical periods.

A: That sounds wonderful. I must remember to go there. And isn't there a science museum?

B: Yes, the most exciting exhibition, if you are interested in engineering. Are you just visiting London, or staying here?

A: I'm working here and trying to see as much of London as I can. There is so much to be seen and so little time to see it in.

B: Yes, that's always the trouble. There is much to see here – old and new, parks and palaces, shops and theatres. I'm a Fleet Street man, myself.

A: Fleet Street? Isn't that where the newspaper are produced?

B: Yes, the “Street of Ink”. I'm a reporter with “The Daily Telegraph”.

#### Exercise 1. Write (retell) the dialogue in the reported speech.

#### Exercise 2. Match the beginning of the proverb in the left column with the end of it in the right column. Finish the table

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Look before</li> <li>2. Don't count your chickens</li> <li>3. When in Rome</li> <li>4. A bird in the hand</li> <li>5. Every cloud has</li> <li>6. There is no point crying</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. do as the Romans do</li> <li>b. is worth two in the bush</li> <li>c. has a silver lining</li> <li>d. until they have hatched</li> <li>e. you leap</li> <li>f. over spilt milk</li> </ol>
---	--



## Speaking and writing

### Exercise 3. Discuss these questions.

1. Translate these proverbs into your language.
2. Find in your language the equivalents to these proverbs.
3. Do you know any other proverbs in your language?
4. What do they mean?

## Reading

What does the proverb “When in Rome, do as the Romans do” mean?

### Do as the Romans do!

It's important when you visit a country to behave in the right way. When you visit Britain you must queue when waiting for a bus. In America, you must always leave a tip in a restaurant even if the service was bad.

Following the “rules” of a country is important if you are going to enjoy your stay and not upset the locals.

### Answer the questions:

1. What should you do when waiting for a bus in Britain?
2. If you don't like the waiters in a restaurant in America, do you leave a tip?
3. Why is it important to behave the right way when you visit a country?

### Culture material. Read the dialogue and retell it

A. This museum contains exhibitions of animal and life from all over the world. When you first enter the museum you are confronted with a huge skeleton of a dinosaur. If you enjoy seeing exotic things, this is the place for you.

B. Are you interested in space? Or may be you really like trains? Perhaps you're a future Korolyov? If so, come into this museum and get lost in a world of your dreams.

C. Here is your chance to see lots of famous people in the same place at the same time, but unfortunately you can't speak to them. Visit this famous wax museum to see thousands of celebrities.

Exercise 4. Complete each sentence with a word connected to different types of art.

1. An \_\_\_ is a person who paints and draws.
2. \_\_\_ are places where you go if you want to see exhibitions of historical objects.
3. When you want to watch a film you go to the \_\_\_.

4. A \_\_\_ makes figures from clay, wood or other materials.
5. Registan square is a famous place to see wonderful \_\_\_.

**Exercise 5. Guess the Rebuses and Crosswords**

**Crossword**

Print this page and complete the crossword offline.

1				2		3			4		5			6
								7					8	
9		10												
										11				
		12	13		14				15					
16	17							18				19		
20			21	22		23					24			
25		26			27					28				
29				30					31					
								32						33
34	35	36	37		38		39							
	40										41			
42					43	44							45	46
						47								
48						49								

**Across**

1. To direct and control a meeting. (5)
3. This book is mine or it is ... book. (2)
4. When a person studies alone, this is called ... study. (4)
8. How ... you spell this word? (2)
9. A dictionary is a kind of ... book. (9)
11. It was a long time ... (3)
12. I am 35 years old. He ... 40. (2)
14. Frequently. (5)
16. The American word for autumn. (4)
18. Prince Charles is a member of the British ... family. (5)
20. You can look up you don't know ... a dictionary. (2)
21. The same as 12 across! (2)
23. The abbreviation for company. (2)
24. A female child. (4)
25. "Peter, would you like to ...?" (said by the chairman of a meeting).(7)

- 28. The simple past of the verb to meet. (3)
- 29. "Have you got ... others points you would like to make before we close the meeting?" (3)
- 30. In grammar, a term for manes of people, places and things. (4)
- 32. A speaker often repeats concisely the main points of his/her presentation at the end. This is a ... . (7)
- 34. The opposite of west. (4)
- 38. An insect which makes honey. (3)
- 40. The same as 24 across. (4)
- 41. This belongs to him. It is ... . (3)
- 42. Have you ... your homework? (4)
- 43. We expect a hotel to provide a very high quality ... . (7)
- 45. Two initials which are used to indicate for example. (2)
- 47. The opposite of come. (2)
- 48. The person in charge of a group of tourists. (5)
- 49. An elegant and fast dog (9)

### Down

- 1. An official sheet of paper which states, for example, that a certain standard of quality has been achieved. (11)
- 2. Extremely unusual. (4)
- 3. To produce. (11)
- 4. Therefore. (2)
- 5. Everyone can speak at least one. (8)
- 6. This means the words of a language (10)
- 7. The opposite of always. (5)
- 10. The opposite of succeed. (4)
- 13. A positive word for thin, often used when describing people. (4)
- 15. The opposite of then. (3)
- 17. We use this abbreviation when we wish to indicate that the write of a letter, poem, book, etc. is not know. (4)
- 19. The simple past of the verb to light. (3)
- 22. "Please ... me confirmation by post". (4)
- 26. This bag is mine or this is ... bag. (2)
- 27. The opposite of yes. (2)
- 31. A customer usually considers not only the price of a product but also its ... . (7)
- 33. The opposite of fall (eg prices fall in a recession) (4)
- 35. The same as 11 across (3)
- 36. Evil or wrong – doing. (3)
- 37. A movement in a certain direction (for example in fashion) (5)
- 39. Mistake (5)

41. The central, most important, male person in a story or a very brave person who carries out some very courageous act. (4)
42. Man's best friend (3)
44. What a hen lays (3)
46. A male divine being (for example, Jupiter or Mars) (3)

## Lesson 3

### UZ EXPOCENTER

#### Exercise 1. Train the pronunciation of the following words.

1. exhibition [eksi'biʃən]
2. Uz Ezpocentre [uz'ekspə'sentə]
3. amusement [ə'mju:zmənt]
4. cuisine [kwi'zi:n]
5. fairs [fɛəz]
6. participation [pa:tisi'peiʃn]
7. advertisement [əd'və:tismənt]

#### Discussion

Describe the picture

1. What do you see in the first picture?
2. What does the advertisement say?
3. Where is the amusement centre situated?
4. What kinds of amusement are there in "Tashkentland"?
5. Are there any cafes, restaurants on the area of the park?
6. Can you taste national cuisine in the cafes and restaurants of the park?
7. What do you know about the exhibitions and fairs held in Uz

Expocentre?

#### Grammar

#### Present, Past, Future Simple Passive.

To be + III form of the verb  
To be + taken

- E.g. Bread is eaten every day.  
The letter was received yesterday  
This work will be done tomorrow

#### Exercise 1. Put the verbs in the Passive Voice.

1. He (to sent) to Samarkand next week.
2. I (to ask) at the lesson yesterday.

3. Many houses (to build) in our town every year.
4. This text (to translate) at the last lesson.
5. These trees (to plant) last autumn.
6. This bone (to give) to my dog tomorrow.
7. Flowers (to sell) in shops and in the streets.
8. Hockey (to play) in winter.
9. I (to give) a very interesting book at the library to morrow.

**Exercise 2. Put the verbs in the Passive Voice making the necessary changes in the sentences.**

E.g. I spent all my money on books last month.  
All my money was spent on books last month.

1. Don't put the cup there: somebody will break it.
2. Why weren't you at the birthday party? They didn't invite me.
3. We shall leave you are not quick.
4. Don't leave these sweets on the table: somebody will eat them.
5. The elephant broke the branch of the tree.
6. The bees attacked the bear when it tried to take their honey.

**Read and remember**

The doctor was sent – Доктора послали – Doktorni yuborishdi.

The doctor was sent for – За доктором послали – Doktorga odam yuborishdi.

**Exercise 3. Translate from Uzbek/Russian into English using Present, Past, Future Simple Passive.**

1. Uni ko'pincha pochtaga yuborishadi./Ее часто посылают на почту.
2. Oldingi yilda uni Kembrijdga yuborishdi./В прошлом году ее послали в Кембридж.
3. Uni Garvardga yuborishadi./Его пошлют в Гарвард.
4. Unga har doim odam yuborishadi./За ней всегда посылают.
5. Kecha unga odam yuborishdi./За ней послали вчера.
6. Ertaga menga odam yuborishadi./За мной пошлют завтра.

**Consult the pronunciation of the active words to the text.**

1. participation in fairs and exhibitions
2. national
3. picturesque riverside

The picture of the exhibition. Students are watching all stands of the exhibitions

4. to mark by awards (to be award(ed) with prize)
5. equipment and technical fitting
6. to meet all requirements
7. to hold
8. to provide
9. mass media

## UZ EXPOCENTERE

National exhibition company “Uz Expocentre” is situated in the heart of Tashkent – the picturesque Riverside of Bozsú. Uz Expocentre is known to many countries throughout the world. Its participation in great International exhibition and fairs has been marked by many awards.

Birth of “Uz Expocentre” took place in 1992 on the base of former Exposition of achievements for national economy. Equipment and technical fitting meet all requirements of International standard.

Activity of Uz Expocentre aims at development and deepening trade – economic relations of Independent Uzbekistan with foreign countries, attractive foreign investments into national economy promotion to development of export potential of the country. Over 25 exhibitions are annually held in pavilions of Uz Expocentre. Exhibitions of such countries as Italy, China, Moldova, Poland, Iran, Czech Republic, Slovakia, India and other countries took place during all the period of Uz Expocentre’s activity.



Uz Expocentre organizes national stands at great exhibitions forums in the Republic of Korea (1993), in Germany (2000), in Japan (2005) and many other countries.

The exhibitions of Uzbekistan were awarded with a bronze prize and Certificate of International Bureau of exhibitions.

Participants are provided with technical maintenance, equipment and decoration of stands, contacts with representatives of mass- media.

Cafes, restaurants situated on the area of amusement complex offer you different cuisine and service of high international standards.

Uz Expocentre has also health – amusement complex consisting of “Aqua - park”, rope – way “Tashkentland” amusement park with the rides of the best firms – manufacturers. Both adults and children can enjoy on its area.

**Exercise 4. Define whether the statement false or true.**

1. Birth of Uz Expocentre took place in 1994.
2. Its participation in international exhibitions and fairs has been marked by many awards.
3. Equipment and technical fitting don't meet the requirements of international standard.
4. The aim of Uz Expocentre is to develop and deepen trade and economic relations of Uzbekistan with foreign countries.
5. One of the aims of Uz Expocentre is to promote export potential of the country.
6. It organized national stands at great forms in Italy, China and Germany.

**Exercise 5. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. Where is National Exhibition Company situated?
2. How is National Company called?
3. Where does Uz Expocentre participate in?
4. How often are exhibitions held annually?
5. What can you say about equipment and technical fitting of international standard?
6. What does the activity of Uz Expocentre aim at?
7. What countries exhibited their stands during Uz Expocentre activity?
8. Was Uz Expocentre awarded with prize and medal?
9. How are participants of exhibitions provided with?
10. What does health – amusement complex consist of?

**Exercise 5. Fill in the gap with the active word.**

1. Uz Expocentre is situated in the heart of Tashkent \_\_\_ riverside of Bozsuz.

2. It \_\_\_\_ in great international exhibitions and fairs.
3. Central pavilion meets \_\_\_\_ of international standard.
4. About 20 exhibitions are \_\_\_\_ held in Uz Expocentre.
5. Participants and organizers \_\_\_\_ with contacts with \_\_\_\_.
6. Cafes and restaurants situated on the area of amusement complex offer you different \_\_\_\_.

**Exercise 6. Insert an article where necessary.**

“Is there any post office near ... house you live in?”

“Yes there is. Go to ... corner of ... street along which ... trams run. Then turn to ... left and walk ... short distance down ... street. Do not cross ... street, of course. You will see ... sign over ... door which says “Post – and Telegraph office”

“Thank you very much. I am sure I shall find it without ... difficulty. I must buy ... stamps, send ... telegram and ask whether they receive ... parcels there. I want to send ... parcel to ... old friend. It will be her birthday in ... week. Perhaps you can tell me where I can find ... shop that sells ... nice things that one can give as ... presents?”

“Yes, certainly. There is ... very good shop not far from here. You can easily walk there in a few minutes. Go straight down ... street that you will see directly in ... front of you when you come out of ... Post office till you come to ... wide street along which .. buses and ... trolley – buses run. Then turn to ... left again and almost immediately you will come to ... beautiful shop with ... big windows find ... nice presents there.”

**Exercise 7. Paraphrase the following sentences using the essential vocabulary.**

1. The colourful bank of Bozsu attracts many people.
2. Uz Expocentre has received many prizes in International exhibitions. The equipment of the pavilions meets all demands of international standard.
3. Every year Expocentre holds very many exhibitions
4. People who take part in exhibitions are provided with all kinds of services.

**Exercise 8. Form derivatives of the following words.**

<p>H</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. participation</li> <li>2.</li> <li>3.</li> <li>4. awards</li> </ol>	<p>V</p> <p>to amuse</p> <p>to exhibit</p>
--	--



**Exercise 9. Find synonyms to the following words.**

1. prize –
2. to take part –
3. bank of the river –
4. colourful –
5. to meet all demands –

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Speak on the text “Uz Expocentre” using active words and expressions.**

**Exercise 2. Give a summary of the text dividing it into several logical parts.**

**Exercise 3. Use the phrases and word combinations and act out the dialogue between a foreigner and a citizen of Tashkent on:**

- a. National Exhibitions Company, its activities.
- b. Participation in annually held exhibitions.
- c. Services provided to organizers and participants.
- d. Hi – tech and Mini – technologies in business.

**Writing**

**Exercise 1. Write an essay on “Uz Expocentre” Republican Trade Exhibition Centre.**

**Exercise 2. Write an essay on “Uz Expocentre” on world “Hi - tech” exhibition.**

**Exercise 3. Write down the dialogue “Aqua park” in the reported speech.**

**Exercise 4. Write an essay on the theme “Made in Uzbekistan”.**

**Practice the pronunciation of the words.**

The picture of “Tashkentland”

1. islet [ailet] – orolcha – островок
2. potable water [poutəbl] – ichimlik  
suvi – питьевая вода
3. to enjoy oneself – huzur qilmoq –  
насладится



“Tashkentland”

## Dialogue

### AQUA PARK

A: I'd like to go to a pool. Its very hot today.

B: Yes, it is very warm in Tashkent this summer. Why not to go to the "Aqua park"?

A: But I do not know it. What is it?

B: Uz Expocentre has also health – amusement complex consisting of "Aqua park", rope – way, "Tashkentland" amusement park.

A: Are you sure that the water in "Aqua park" is pure and fresh?

B: Yes, purity of water in pools of it meets the requirements of potable water.

A: How do they get it?

B: Three powerful pump stations provide constant chemical and biological cleaning of water (according to Italian technology).

A: Are the pools meant for children or grown – ups?

B: There are different pools for infants and teenagers, imitating sea waves. Besides, there is a complex of water mountains "Kamikadze", "Toboggan" and "Slow line".

A: Oh, I see, there are a number of amusements for adults and children on islet. Probably I'll go enjoy myself. Thank you for your advice.

B: Don't mention it. Good luck.

## Writing

**Exercise 5. Choose the correct answer and fill in the gaps to complete the sentences.**

1. Hamlet was \_\_\_ by Shakespeare.

a) wrote            b) written

2. Gravity was \_\_\_ by Sir Isaac Newton.

a) discover        b) discovered

3. Baseball is \_\_\_ by Americans.

a) play            b) played

4. Akhmad Fargani \_\_\_ in Kuva.

a) was born        b) born

5. Ibn Sina is \_\_\_ as Avicenna by Europeans.

a) known         b) knew

**Exercise 6. Complete the sentences using the following words: Be careful – one word is unnecessary.**

Surface, mysterious, impact, explosion, atmosphere, destruction

1. The \_\_\_ caused by the meteor was visible from far away.
2. The \_\_\_ was so loud we could hear it over ten kilometers away.
3. The \_\_\_ of the moon is covered in craters.
4. Meteors burn up when they enter the \_\_\_ of the earth.
5. Nobody knows what caused the explosion, it is still \_\_\_.

**Exercise 7. Open the brackets and write the necessary form of the verbs.**

E.g. He said he (is staying, was staying) at the “Ritz” Hotel. He said he was staying at the “Ritz” Hotel.

1. They realized that they (lost, had lost) their way in the dark.
2. He asked me where I (study, studied).
3. I thought that I (shall finish, should finish) my work at that time.
4. He says he (works, worked) at school two years ago.
5. Victor said he (is, was) very busy.
6. My friend asked me who (is playing, was playing) the piano in the sitting – room.
7. He said he (will come, would come) to the station to see me off.
8. I was sure he (posted, had posted) the letter.
9. I think the whether (will be, would be) fine next week.
10. I hope it (will not change, would not change) for the worse.
11. I knew that he (is, was) a very clever man.
12. I want to know what he (has bought, had bought) for her birthday.
13. I asked my sister to tell me what she (has seen, had seen) at the museum.

**Exercise 8. Match the beginning of the proverb in the left column with its ending in the right column.**

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Don't put all your eggs</li> <li>2. If you chase two hares,</li> <li>3. Don't look a gift horse</li> <li>4. All that glitters</li> <li>5. After dinner sleep a while,</li> <li>6. Out of sight</li> <li>7. Love is</li> <li>8. Early to bed and early to rise</li> <li>9. It's never too late</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. After supper walk a mile</li> <li>b. Out of mind</li> <li>c. Blind</li> <li>d. Makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise</li> <li>e. To learn</li> <li>f. Is not gold</li> <li>g. In the mouth</li> <li>h. You will catch none</li> <li>i. In one basket</li> </ol>
--	---

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

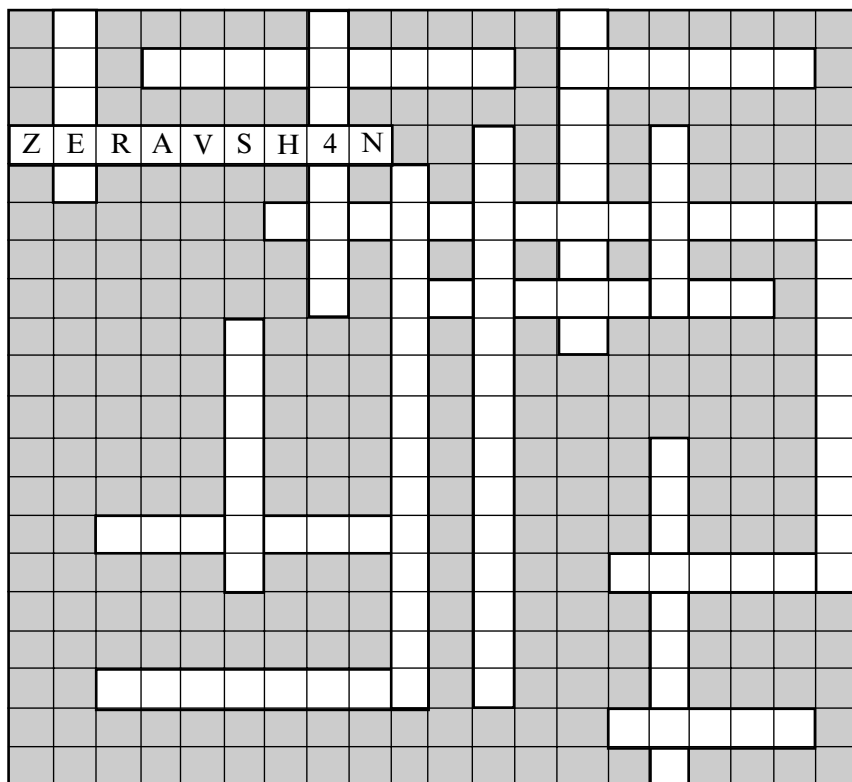
Exercise 9. Find in your native language the equivalence to the English proverbs.

Exercise 10. Illustrate the usage of these proverbs in situations or short stories of yours.

Exercise 11. What other proverbs do you know in the English or Uzbek/ Russian languages?

### Crosswords

Fill all the words into this puzzle



<b>whitegold</b>	<b>Aralsea</b>	<b>Ustyurtplateau</b>	<b>treatise</b>
<b>Arabs</b>	<b>Zeravshan</b>	<b>caravan</b>	<b>Islam</b>
<b>Uzbekistan</b>	<b>cotton</b>	<b>greatsilkway</b>	<b>Qyzylqumdesert</b>
<b>Uzbeki</b>	<b>dunes</b>	<b>turanplane</b>	<b>Mirzacholdesert</b>
<b>algorithm</b>	<b>Tashkent</b>		

## Lesson 4

### NATIONAL MONUMENT OF THE USA THE STATUE OF LIBERTY

“We will not forget that Liberty has here made her home, nor shall her chosen altar be neglected” President Grover Cleveland

#### Train the pronunciation

1. Liberty [li:bəti]
2. Erect [ɪ'rekt]
3. Symbolize [sɪmbə'laɪz]
4. Torch [tɔ:tʃ]
5. Revolution [revə'lʊʃn]
6. Independence [ɪndi'pendəns]
7. Crown [kraun]



#### Discussion

**What do you know about the statue of Liberty**

1. Who gave the Statue to the people of the United States?
2. Where is the Statue of Liberty situated (erected founded)?
3. What does the Statue of Liberty symbolize?
4. When was the Statue brought to the USA?

**Use the following words.**

Statue of Liberty To erect revolution Symbolize independence Torch crown
---

#### Grammar material Passive voice with Continuous and Perfect Tenses

Present Continuous am/is/are being + done/cleaned
---

Active: Ann is cleaning her room at the moment.
---

Passive: The room is being cleaned by Ann at the moment.
--

Past Continuous was/were being + done cleaned
---

Active: Ann was cleaning the room when I entered.
---

Passive: The room was being cleaned when I entered.
---

Present Perfect have/has been + done/cleaned
--

Active: The room looks nice. Ann has cleaned it.
--

Passive: The room looks nice. It has been cleaned.
--

Past Perfect had been + done/cleaned

Active: The room looked much better. Ann had cleaned it.

Passive: The room looked much better. It had been cleaned.

Present simple am/is/are + done (cleaned)

Active: Ann cleans this room every day.

Passive: This room is cleaned every day.

Past simple was/were + done/cleaned

Active: Ann cleaned this room every day.

Passive: This room was cleaned every day.

Future simple shall/will + done

Active: Ann will clean the room.

Passive: The room will be cleaned by Ann.

### Exercise 1. Use the verb in the passive form.

E.g. He (to send) to Moscow next week.

He will be sent to Moscow next week.

1. I (to ask) at the lesson yesterday.
2. Many houses (to build) in our town every year.
3. This work (to do) tomorrow.
4. We (to invite) to a concert last Sunday.
5. Hockey (to play) in winter.
6. His new book (to finish) next year.
7. Flowers (to sell) in shops and in the streets.
8. St. Petersburg (to found) in 1703.
9. These trees (to plant) last summer.
10. He (to help) with his report tomorrow.

### Exercise 2. Use the verb in the right form.

1. Your luggage will (bring, be brought) up in the lift.
2. The porter will (bring, be brought) your luggage to your room.
3. They can (leave, be left) the key with the clerk downstairs.
4. From the station they will (take, be taken) straight to the hotel.
5. Tomorrow he will (take, taken) them to the Russian museum.
6. At the station they will (meet, be met) by a man from the travel agency.
7. She will (meet, be met) them in hall upstairs.
8. You may (leave, be left) your coat and hat in the cloak - room downstairs.

**Exercise 3. Change the Active voice into Passive voice.**

E.g. They are repairing the clock now.  
The clock is being repaired now.

By 6 o'clock they had finished the work.  
The work had been finished by 6 o'clock

At 12 o'clock the workers were loading the trucks.  
The trucks were being loaded at 12 o'clock.

They haven't brought back my skates.  
My skates haven't been brought back.

1. They are building a new concern hall in our street.
2. They were playing tennis from 4 till 5.
3. They are building a bridge over the river.
4. We were looking at the man with great surprise.
5. The secretary is typing the letters now.
6. They were examining the papers attentively when I entered.

**Exercise 4. Answer the questions using the Passive voice.**

E.g. Do you know the news? Yes, it has been told to me by Mary.

1. Have they discussed the novel?
2. Has the secretary typed the letters?
3. Have they (recently) built anew plant in the city?
4. When had they finished the work?
5. What had they done when I came home?
6. What had they done by 12 o'clock?
7. Who has made some coffee?
8. Have you ironed your dress?
9. When had they finished the work?

**Exercise 5. Paraphrase the Active voice into the Passive voice.**

E.g. The girl is watering her flowers.  
The flowers are being watered by the girl.

The girl was washing up the dishes when I came.  
The dishes were being washed up when I came.

1. Somebody is digging up the trees in the garden.
2. Somebody is knocking at the door now.
3. I heard footsteps behind me. Somebody was following up.
4. They are repairing my car.

5. He was whitewashing the fence when his friends came.
6. The hunter was shooting wild birds when suddenly he saw a wolf.

**Remember: Passive voice with modals can, must** - Это нужно сделать  
 – It must be done – Buni qilish kerak. Это можно сделать – It can be done  
 – Buni qilish mumkin.

**Exercise 6. Change (paraphrase) the sentence into the passive voice.**

- E.g. 1. They must return all the books to the library  
 All the books must be returned to the library  
 2. You can find the book you need in any library  
 The books can be found in any library.

1. You must do three of these exercises tomorrow.
2. We must send these letters at once.
3. You must take the boxes to the station.
4. You can cross the river on a raft.
5. The workers can finish the building of the house very soon.
6. I can easily forgive this mistake.
7. You must do this work very carefully.
8. You can find such berries every where.

**Exercise 7. Put the sentences in the Active or Passive Voice.**

1. The state of liberty \_\_\_ in 1886.
  - a) is building                      c) was built
  - b) has been built                d) had building
2. Between the people of France and the United States of America the friendship \_\_\_ during the American Revolution.
  - a) established                      c) had been established
  - b) would established            d) was established

### Active words

1. to be commissioned [kə'miʃənd] - быть облачённым полномочиями, получивший поручение
2. to celebrate ['selibreit] - праздновать, прославлять
3. recognition [rekəg'nɪʃn] - узнавание, признание (официальное признание независимости и суверенитета страны)
4. Declaration of Independence [deklə'reɪʃnəv indi'pendəns] - декларация о независимости
5. to be agreed - быть согласованным, to agree - соглашаться
6. entertainment [entə'teɪnmənt] - развлечения, представления



7. benefit theatrical event - благотворительные театральные представления
8. auction [ə:kʃən] - аукцион, торг
9. dedication [dedi'keɪʃn] - посвящение
10. centennial [sen'tenjəl] - столетний, происходящий раз в сто лет senenary [sen'ti:nəri] - столетие, день празднования столетней годовщины
11. crate - упаковочная клетка, корзина
12. to design - составлять план, конструировать, проектировать, рисовать, изображать, делать эскизы.

## TEXT I

### STATUE OF LIBERTY HISTORY

The Statue of Liberty National Monument officially celebrated her 100<sup>th</sup> birthday on October 28, 1986. The people of France gave the Statue to the people of the United States over one hundred years ago in recognition of the friendship established during the American Revolution. Over the years, the Statue of Liberty has grown to include freedom and democracy as well as this international friendship.

Sculptor Frederic Auguste Bartholdi was commissioned (appointed to design sculpture with the year 1876 in mind for completion, to commemorate the centennial of the American Declaration of Independence. The statue was a joint effort between America and France. It was agreed upon that the American people were to build the pedestal and the French people were responsible for the statue and its assembly in the United States.

But lack of (money) funds was a problem on both sides of the Atlantic Ocean. In France, public fees, various forms of entertainment, and a lottery were used to raise funds. In the United States, benefit theatrical events, art exhibitions, auctions and prize fights assisted in providing needed funds.

The Statue was completed in France in July, 1884 and pedestal construction was finished in April 1886. The Statue arrived in New York Harbor in June of 1885 on board the French frigate "Isere" which transported the Statue of Liberty from France to the United States. In transit, the Statue was reduced to 350 individual pieces and packed in 214 crates. The Statue was re - assembled on her new pedestal in the Ellis Island in the New York Harbor in 4 months time. On October 28<sup>th</sup> 1886, the dedication of the Statue of Liberty took place in front of thousands of spectators. She was a centennial gift ten years late.

## TEXT II

There are 25 windows in the crown which symbolize gemstones found on the earth and the heaven's rays shining over the world. The seven rays of the Statue's crown represent the seven seas and continents of the world. The tablet

which the Statue holds in her left hand reads (in Roman numerals) July 4<sup>th</sup>, 1776. In her right hand she holds a torch.

Height from ground to tip of torch is 92,99m.

**Note:** Lady Liberty - she

The total weight of copper in the statue is 62000 pounds (31 tons) and the total weight of steel in the statue is 250000 pounds (125 tons). Total weight of the statue's concrete foundation is 54 million pounds (27000 tons).

Wind sway: winds of 50 miles per hour cause the statue to sway 3 inches (7.62 cm) and the torch sways 5 inches (12.70 cm)

**Look, read and remember:** Measures: 1 pound = 453,6 г 1 inch = 2,54 см 1 mile = 1609 м морская миля - 1853 м

On October 28<sup>th</sup>, 1886 inauguration took place. President Grover Cleveland accepted the statue on behalf of the United States and said in part: "We will not forget that Liberty has here made her home, nor shall her chosen altar be neglected".

**Exercise 1. Read text I, II and give a title to the second text.**

**Exercise 2. Summarize the text using new words and expressions.**

**Reading comprehension exercises.**

**Exercise 1. Define whether the questions false or true**

1. The Statue of Liberty National Monument celebrated her 100<sup>th</sup> birthday on November 28, 1986.
2. The people of France gave the Statue to the people of the United States in recognition of the friendship established during the American Civil War.
3. Frederic Augusta Bartholdi was a French sculptor.
4. He was going to complete the sculpture by 1876.
5. It was agreed upon that the American people were to build the statue and the French people were responsible for the pedestal.
6. The Statue was completed in France in July 1886.
7. The pedestal construction was finished in April 1886.
8. The Statue arrived in New York City in 1885.
9. The monument was re - assembled in 14 weeks time.
10. Lady Liberty was a centennial gift 10 years before.

**Exercise 2. Answer the questions to the text.**

1. When did the Americans celebrate the centenary of the Statue of Liberty?

2. What was established between the American and French people during the American Revolution?
3. Who was commissioned to design the sculptor?
4. What event did the sculptor commemorate?
5. Who was agreed to build the pedestal?
6. Who was responsible for the Statue?
7. Could the French and American sides build the Statue in time?
8. When was the Statue completed in France?
9. When was the pedestal construction finished in America?
10. How did they transport the Statue from France to America?
11. When did the dedication of the Statue take place?

**Exercise 3. Fill in the gap with the active vocabulary**

1. They officially \_\_\_\_ her 100<sup>th</sup> birthday in 1986.
2. The French people gave the Statue to the people of the United States \_\_\_\_ of the friendship between them.
3. The American Declaration of \_\_\_\_ was adopted in 1776.
4. The two countries \_\_\_\_ upon the building of the Statue of Liberty in America.
5. In France various forms \_\_\_\_ were used to raise funds for the Statue of Liberty.
6. In order to provide needed sums \_\_\_\_ theatrical events, art exhibitions \_\_\_\_ were held.
7. On October 28<sup>th</sup> 1886, the \_\_\_\_ of the Statue of Liberty took place in New York Harbor.
8. Lady Liberty Monument was a \_\_\_\_ gift ten years late.
9. French sculptor F. Bartholdi was recognizable \_\_\_\_ the sculpture.
10. Frederic Augusta Bartholdi was \_\_\_\_ to design the sculptor.

**Exercise 4. Put the sentences in the right logical order.**

1. Sculptor F. Bartholdi to complete the statue in 1876.
2. They raised money by different forms of entertainment and art auctions.
3. The Statue of Liberty was a centennial gift ten years late.
4. Lack of bounds was a problem on both sides of the Atlantic Ocean.
5. The people of France gave the Statue to the people of America over hundred years ago.

**Exercise 5. Insert an article where necessary.**

In ... fifteenth century ... people knew only three continents: ... Europe, ... Asia, and ... Africa. They knew nothing about such ... big continent as ... America. ... man who discovered ... America was born in 1451 in ... Italy.

His name was Christopher Columbus. He became ... sailor at ... early age. Knowing that ... earth was round, he decided to reach ... India but did not have ... money, and nobody wanted to help him. At last ... king of the ... Spain gave him ... money for ... expedition. He set ... sail in 1492. ... voyage was very dangerous and difficult.

**Exercise 6. Form derivatives from the following words.**

Noun	Verb
1. recognition	to ...
2. ...	to celebrate
3. dedication	to ...
4. ...	to entertain
5. declaration	to declare

**Exercise 7. Paraphrase the sentences using Active Vocabulary**

1. The people of America marked the 100<sup>th</sup> birthday of the Statue of Liberty.
2. Sculptor F.A. Bartholdi was appointed to build the monument.
3. The 100<sup>th</sup> Anniversary of the Declaration of Independence was held in 1986.
4. The pictures were sold at the art works shop.

**Speaking**

**Read, learn and act out a dialogue Pair work. A Dialogue**

- Can you describe me the Statue of Liberty?
- Yes, it is a magnificent Monument of Lady Liberty. Its height from ground to tip of torch is 92,99 m.
- What does she symbolize?
- She is beloved friend, a living symbol of freedom to millions around the world. It is a tribute to the people who created her, to the ideals she represents, and to the hopes she inspires.
- I see a tablet in her left hand. What is it written on it?
- The tablet reads in Roman numerals "July 4<sup>th</sup>, 1776".
- How many windows are there in the crown?
- There are 25 windows in the crown which symbolize gemstones found on the earth and the heaven's rays shining over the world.
- Does the number of rays represent anything?
- Yes, the seven rays of the Statue's crown represent the seven seas and continents of the world.
- Do you know the height of the whole monument?

- Yes, its height from ground to tip of torch is 92,99m.
- Oh, its great. I must visit.
- The statue of Liberty National Monument and the Ellis Island Immigration Museum.
- Yes, certainly you must.

## Lesson 5

### INDEPENDENCE DAY (4 JULY)

Independence Day is regarded as the birthday of the United States as a free and independent nation. Most Americans simply call it the “Fourth of July,” on which date it always falls. July 4, 1776, John Hancock, Thomas Jefferson and Benjamin Franklin, well known patriots declared the Independence of the 13 American colonies from Great Britain.

The holiday recalls the signing the Declaration of Independence on July 4, 1776. At that time, the people of the 13 British colonies located along the eastern coast of what is now the United States were involved in a war over what they considered unjust treatment by the king and parliament in Britain. The war began in 1775. As the war continued, the colonists realized that they were fighting not just for better treatment; they were fighting for freedom from the England’s rules. The Declaration of Independence, signed by the leaders from the colonies, stated this clearly, and for the first time in an official document the colonies were referred to as the United States of America. Independence Day is a federal holiday celebrating the Adoption of the Declaration of Independence declaring Independence from the Kingdom of Great Britain.

It is a day of picnics and patriotic parades, a night of concerts and fireworks. The flying of the American flag (which also occurs on Memorial Day and other holidays) is widespread. On July 4, 1976, the 200<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the Declaration of Independence was marked by grand festivals across the nation.

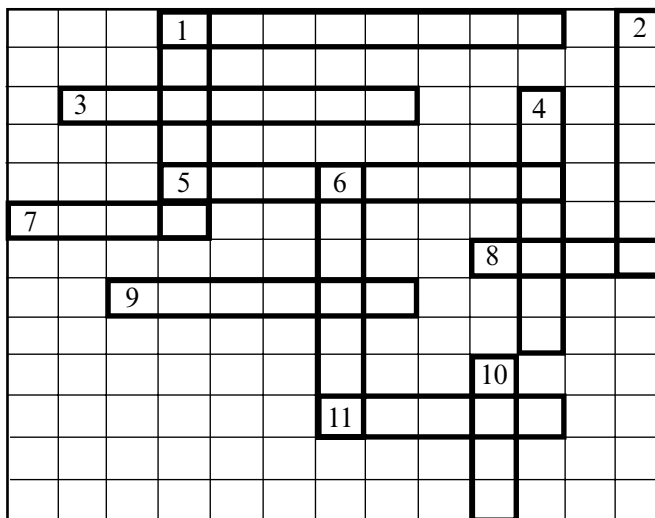
Independence Day 2001 commemorated the 225<sup>th</sup> anniversary of the signing of the U.S. Declaration of Independence. On July 4, 2006 the U.S.A. celebrates 230<sup>th</sup> year since Independence.

#### Exercise 1. Choose the right version.

<p>1. What do the stripes on the flag represent?</p> <p><b>A</b> The roads in our country</p> <p><b>B</b> Unity</p> <p><b>C</b> The sun’s rays</p> <p><b>D</b> Nothing, they just looked nice</p>	<p>2. What do the colors red, white and blue mean?</p> <p><b>A</b> Courage</p> <p><b>B</b> Honor</p> <p><b>C</b> Justice</p> <p><b>D</b> All of the above</p>
---	---

3. Which of the following qualities does the eagle represent? A Strength B Honor C Justice D All of the above	4. What phrase is Uncle Sam famous for? A I want you B I like you C I love America D I need you
5. Where is the Statue of Liberty found? _____	6. What is the title of our national anthem? _____
7. The Liberty Bell rang to proclaim our freedom in 1876. A False B True	8. Our national flower is the rose. A False B True

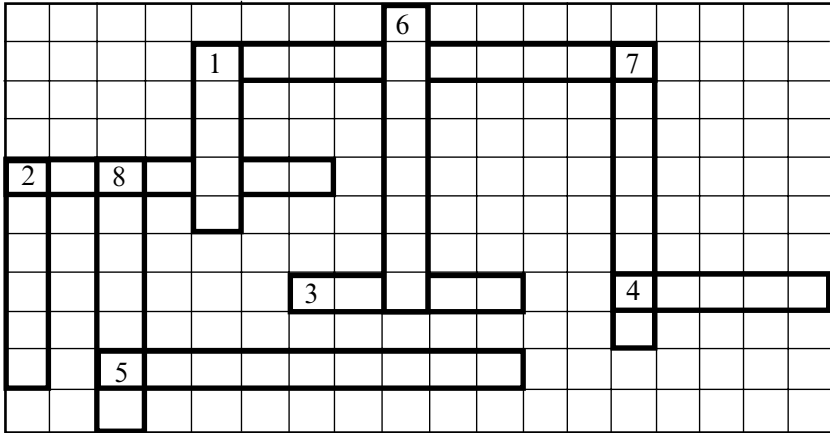
### Exercise 2. Solve the Crossword



**Down** 1. to make an important promise 2. the idea of being fair or right  
4. to gladly greet someone or receive something with joy 6. to face danger without fear or hesitation 10. a cloth banner decorated to stand for a country. American's has red and white stripes, and a blue square with white stars in the upper left corner.

**Across** 1. to announce or make something widely known 3. being out from under the control of something or someone. The Bill of Rights lists these for the American people. 5. something beautiful and delicate such as a rose 7. to be completely clean; to be free from evil 8. a beautiful flower with long, thorny stems that means love 9. to continue in a certain way for a long time 11. a large, powerful bird with sharp claws, large wings and great eyesight.

## Washington



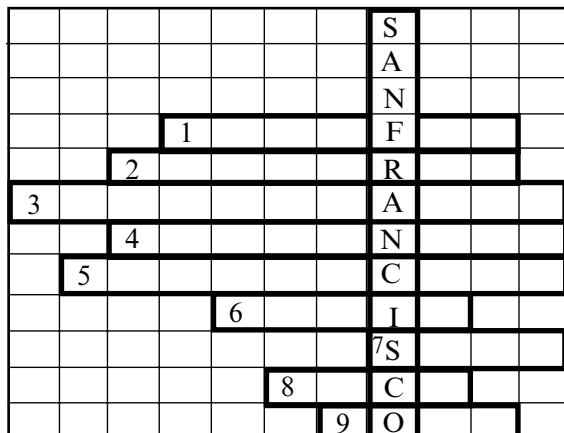
### Across

1. Who was the first president?
2. What building is the highest place in the city
3. What is the upper House of the Congress?
4. Who was the first president living in the White House?
5. What was William Thornton?

### Down

1. What house does the president live and work in?
2. What trees are the most famous in the city?
6. What is the most famous memorial?
7. What gallery has a lot of art collections by the great masters?
8. What river flows in the city?

## San - Francisco



1. San – Francisco is a city between San – Francisco Bay and the ... Ocean.
2. The Federal Prison is on the territory of San Francisco.
3. Several times San – Francisco was hit by these processes.
4. The bridge is the symbol of San – Francisco.
5. The valley is an important centre of the U.S. computer and electronics industry.
6. One of the greatest writers who made San – Francisco his home in the mid – 1860s.
7. One of those who found gold on the America River.

### **Pleasure reading**

#### **MADAME TUSSAUD’S WAX MUSEUM, NEW YORK**

Get up close and personal with your favorite celebrities at the 85,000 square-foot, five-story Madame Tussaud’s New York. The New York version of the famous London museum takes on “the face of the place” presenting New York’s most famous and infamous personalities, as well as figures of international fame and acclaim. Leave time to tour these six themed, interactive environments showcasing nearly 200 masterfully crafted, lifelike wax figures:

The Opening Night Party, set in an Italian baroque garden, features Woody Allen, Bette Midler, Nicolas Cage, Hugh Grant, Oprah Winfrey, Mayor Rudolph Giuliani and Donald Trump;

Madame Tussaud’s Story, spanning 200 years of history, features Marie Antoinette and Napoleon’s lover Josephine;

Behind the Scenes is a multimedia exhibit about the process of creating the incredibly life-like wax figures at the museum featuring Al Roker and others;

The Gallery, set in a meeting of the United Nations, features The Dalai Lama, Maya Angelou, John F. Kennedy, Albert Einstein, Martin Luther King, Jr., Buffalo Bill and Diana, Princess of Wales;

Popular Culture, a whirlwind history of the trendsetters of the 20th century, features Mikhail Barishnikov, Babe Ruth, Janis Joplin, Charlie Chaplin, The Beatles, Marilyn Monroe, John Wayne, Bill Gates and Neil Armstrong;

It Happened in New York is an immersive midnight ride celebrating the city’s illustrious history.

Madame Tussaud’s New York joins the growing international family of museums with locations in London, Amsterdam, Las Vegas and Hong Kong. The tradition began in 18th century Paris, when Madame Tussaud was forced to create death masks for aristocrats executed in the French Revolution. In 1835, she established the London museum, which now welcomes more than 2.5 million guests each year.



## UNIT 7.

### HEALTHY WAY OF LIFE

#### Lessons 1

#### What is Health?

Exercise 1. Look at the pictures and name the rooms. Match the words given in the box with the pictures.

Pictures:

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

#### Zearn the words

1. dentist – tish doktori – стоматолог
2. physician – terapevt – терапевт
3. surgeon – jarroh – хирург
4. to diagnose – tashhis – диагноз
5. oculist – ko‘z doktori – окулист
6. injection – ukol – укол
7. ambulance – tez yordam – скорая помощь
8. stretcher – zambil – носилки



**Exercise 2. Phonetic Drill. Train the pronunciation of the words above consulting the dictionary.**

1. dentist
2. physician
3. surgeon
4. to diagnose
5. oculist
6. injection
7. ambulance
8. stretcher
9. supersonic Diagnosis
10. supersound

**Exercise 3. Try to answer the questions according to the picture and make a group discussion.**

1. Whom do you consult if you have a sore throat? How do you call this room and this specialist?
2. What is the name of the room where the specialist operate smb on?



3. In what picture is the physician shown and what is he doing?
4. What is the duty of an oculist? In what picture can you see an oculist?
5. Under what circumstances is a patient carried on stretcher?
6. Do you often consult a dentist? If yes, why and not why?
7. Where can the patients get their injections? How do we call this room?

8. If a doctor can't diagnose the patient's illness, what does he usually do?
9. How do we call the room of supersonic diagnosis?

### Grammar Practice.

**Model:** You must answer this letter today.  
Modal verb "must"-(obligation, necessity, probability, supposition, urgent command)  
"to have to"- obligation, necessity"to be to"  
arrangement, agreement

#### Exercise 1. Paraphrase the underlined part of the sentences using the modal verb "must"

1. The girl was evidently reading something funny . She was smiling all the time.
2. Tom was obviously upset by something. I never saw him in such a mood.
3. Everybody evidently had noticed that she was not used to speaking in public.
4. The dog probably have recognized his master. It did not bark as we approached the house.
5. Look! People are hurrying along the street with collars and umbrellas up. It is probably raining hard.
6. Ann is probably at home now. I saw her leaving the University.
7. Lanny was evidently very tired after his long journey. There was no need for her to disturb him.
8. Marry was probably ill, otherwise she would have come.

#### Exercise 2. Read the following text, translate it into your native language and discuss it in the classroom.

### WHAT IS HEALTH?

Health is a state of physical, mental and social well-being. It involves more than just the absence of disease. A truly healthy person not only feels good physically but also has a realistic outlook on life and gets along well with other people.

Good health enables people to enjoy life and have the opportunity to achieve their aim.

#### Elements of Physical Health.

All parts of the body must work together properly to maintain physical health. A person who is in good physical condition has the strength and energy to enjoy an active life and withstand the stresses of daily life.

The various practices that help maintain health include proper nutrition, exercise, rest and sleep, cleanliness and regular medical and dental care.

Society as a whole benefits from people's good health just as individuals do. For that reason, many government and voluntary agencies strive to preserve and improve the health of all people.

The World Health Organization (WHO) an agency of the United Nations, works to promote better health throughout the world.

Public Health – includes all actions taken to maintain and improve the general health of a community. Government health programs provide most public health services. In addition many voluntary health agencies receive contributions to combat specific diseases, AIDS and HIVs. These agencies provide medical services campaign for health legislation and make important contribution to health education.

### **Discussion**

**Try to answer the questions according to the text.**

1. What do you understand by health?
2. Whom can we call a healthy person?
3. What does a good health do for the people?
4. What kind of people enjoy life?
5. What does health include or what do people need in order to maintain health?
6. Why do we need to preserve and improve health?
7. How is the general health of a community called?

**Exercise 1. Say whether these statements true or false.**

1. Good health enables people to enjoy life.
2. In order to preserve physical health all parts of the body must work separately.
3. Regular exercise, proper rest and nutrition, sleep and cleanliness help people to maintain health.
4. A healthy person feels good physically but has a pessimistic outlook on life.
5. A person, in good physical condition has got the strength to withstand the stresses of daily life.
6. The general health of community isn't the concern of Public Health.
7. The WHO works to promote better health throughout the world.
8. Nothing is doing to combat specific diseases such as: cancer and lung diseases; AIDS and HIV.

**Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences using the active words from the text.**

1. The meaning of the word “health” is the absence of.... in all parts of one’s body.
2. Every person in good physical ....., enjoys an active life in the society.
3. Many health organizations are contributing ... such diseases as cancer, AIDS and HIV and lung diseases.
4. A truly healthy person has a realistic ... on life.
5. Everyone must follow these necessary things to maintain health such as: ....., rest, sleep, cleanliness, nutrition and a regular medical care.
6. Physical, .... and social well-being of a person is called health.

**Exercise 3. Find as many verbs as possible from the text to the word : ”health”: to form a phrase and translate it into Uzbek or Russian.**

Verb	health
------	--------

**Exercise 4. Find as many words and phrases as possible with the word “health” as a noun and as an adjective from the text and copy them out and learn them.**

	Noun	adj	noun
Health	program	public	Health
	.....	.....	
	.....	.....	
	.....	.....	
	.....	.....	
	.....	.....	

**Exercise 5. Read this text and entitle every passage and answer the questions given below.**

“What must we do -to be healthy?”

When people grow older they realize how important it is to be healthy.

And

1. What do we have to do – to be healthy?
2. Why do we use the proverb: “Health is above wealth”?

I. First of all we must get up as early as possible. Remember too much sleep can make you feel tired as if you worked the whole day. But we should

remember that we must sleep 7 or 8 hours every night in order to have enough energy and clear mind for the next day.

II. Secondly we must think of what we eat. So we must eat more and more of dairy products, fish and fish products, fresh fruits and vegetables.

III. Then we must go in for sports. Every day we must do morning exercises and besides that we must seriously train one of the sports-such as tennis, football, skating, racing, swimming, volley-ball, running and so on.

IV. Don't forget to have a real holiday every year in one of the health resorts. You must plan your every day life, your work ahead in order to be able to fit for the next year.

### **Exercise 6. Choose the right order to make up a story.**

1. Usually a coin or two will have been hidden inside pudding.
2. No doubt English hospitals receive urgent telephone calls every year from parents.
3. The next morning they eat Christmas pudding.
4. The part of the fun is to see who finds it.
5. While eating pudding it is the habit of children to swallow the coins as they can't notice it before.

A: 5,2,4,3,1    B: 3,1,5,4,2    C: 3,1,2,5,4    D: 3,1,4,5,2

E: 1,4,3,2,5

### **Exercise 7. Choose the sentence expressing the main idea of the text.**

1. If you are talking, make your conversation interesting.
2. Take turns. Do not talk when someone else is talking.
3. Talk so that all can hear.
4. Talk clearly and distinctly.
5. One must know the culture of talking among people.

## **Speaking**

### **Group Discussion**

#### **Exercise 1. Discuss the following questions in the classroom.**

1. Must a man be born a good doctor or can he learn to be one?
2. What is more important in a good doctor: knowledge, talent or experience?
3. Can a doctor diagnose his patient's illness before he gets the results of all the analysis? If you think so, under what conditions can it be done?
4. Must a person be really brave and decisive to become a doctor or a nurse? What makes you think so?

5. Do you want to be a doctor or a nurse? Why?
6. If you become a doctor, will you go to see your patients in any weather, at any place, at any time of the day or night? What will you be able to do? What won't you be able to do?
7. What qualities must a person have to make a really good doctor?

**Exercise 2. Make up a group discussion on each item of the text of exercise 5 "what must we do-to be healthy"**

Pair work.

Role play. (between 3-4 students)

**Exercise 3. Make up a dialogue on each item of the text.**

1. Health and meals.
2. Health and sports.
3. Health and rest.
4. Health and getting up early.

**Exercise 4. Read these proverbs and match them with the passages of the text "What must we do – to be healthy "**

1. An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
2. Early to bed and early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.
3. Healthy mind in a healthy body.
4. Health is above wealth.
5. Wealth is nothing without health.

**Exercise 5. Read these humour and jokes and retell them.**

### **Jokes**

A waiter was suddenly taken to a hospital to be operated on. As he lay on the operating table, in great pain, he saw a doctor in white pass by.

"Doctor, I'm in great pain. Would you mind taking care of me?"

"I'm sorry, but this isn't my table."

### **Humour**

"All right, Professor, stick out your tongue and say, ah!", said the doctor.

"Ah!", said the professor

"Strange colour for a tongue, Plaid! No, wait, let me look closer", said the doctor.

"Oh, it's something stuck on your tongue, Professor, a three cent stamp!"

"My God! And I've searched for it everywhere"

## Writing

**Exercise 1. Make up short stories using the following words and word combinations in writing.**

### Seeing a doctor

1. to fall ill, to have a temperature, to have to, high, to stay in bed, 38,8 C, to see a doctor, to miss classes, to ring up.

A visit to a sick friend.

2. to feel ill, to see a doctor, to have a temperature, to ring up, to go to see, how are you, to feel sorry, to miss classes, notes.

**Exercise 2. Change the following dialogues into indirect speech paying attention to the sequences of tenses and learn these dialogues by heart according to the model.**

**Model: What did Ann say?**

#### Dialogue 1

Ann said to the doctor: "Doctor, my mother is ill. Can you help her?"

Ann said that her mother was ill and if he could help her.

#### Dialogue 2

Tom: Doctor, please help us. My mother has the worst memory, I ever heard of.

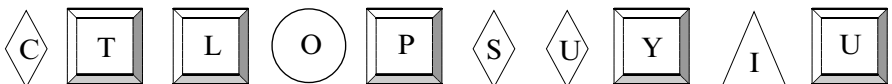
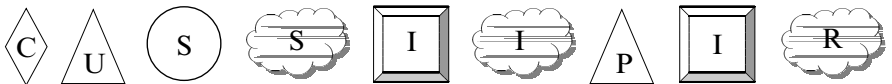
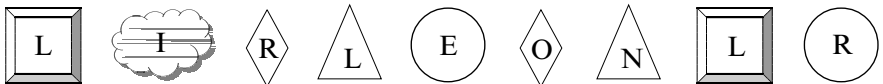
Doctor: Forgets everything, eh?

Tom: No, remembers everything

## Now a Puzzle for Relaxation

### Garden Flowers

Can you see the names of six garden flowers hidden in this sketch? By putting together the letters on each separate shape, you will soon see what they are.





## Lessons 2

### AT THE DOCTOR'S

**Exercise 1. Look at these pictures and answer the questions given below them using the words in the box, and make a group discussion.**

- 1. Picture of a doctor with a patient**
- 2. Picture of a patient taking injection**
- 3. Patient at the chemist's shop**

Words: patient, doctor, injection, prescription, chemist's shop, physician (therapist), syringe, novocaine.

#### **Discussion**

##### **Questions for discussion on the picture.**

1. What is shown in the first picture? How do we call this doctor? What kind of instruments does he use?
2. Where can a patient take injections? How do we call a person who is doing an injection?
3. Where can a patient have his prescription made up? How do we call this place?

**Phonetic Drill. Train the pronunciation of the following words consulting the dictionary.**

Patient, physician, therapist, injection, prescription, syringe, novocain.

**Vocabulary. Learn the following words by heart.**

Patient, physician, therapist, injection, prescription, syringe, novocain.

#### **Grammar Practice**

**Modal verb "may-might" - (permission, reproach, uncertainty)**

May I ask you to explain the rule once more?

**Model: May I ask you to explain the rule once more?**

**Exercise 1. Use "may" in the correct form followed by the appropriate infinitive.**

1. It ..... (to be taken) for a joke if his face had not been so serious.
2. A fool ... ask more questions, than a wise man ....answer.
3. You... read this article you have enough knowledge.
4. It ... be he did not see you, otherwise he would have come up to you.

5. You ....take any present which you like.
6. In the Art Museum of Uzbekistan you...see very interesting things.

**Exercise 2. Paraphrase the following sentences using modal verbs “can and may” in the correct form.**

1. We suppose they were unable to get in touch with you (.....)
2. Would you mind my smoking here (.....)
3. We don't believe that he has done the work carelessly. (.....)
4. Perhaps I shall have to take her to hospital, it is possible that she has broken her leg.
5. I think he will be able to substitute for you in case you shouldn't come (.....)
6. Perhaps you changed at the wrong station, that's why it took you so long to get here (.....)

**Read the following text, translate it into your native language and discuss it in the classroom.**

### **AT THE DOCTOR'S**

My mother suddenly fell ill. She was feverish and felt very bad. She had a splitting headache and a terrible cough. We telephoned for our district doctor.

The doctor came and examined her, felt her pulse, took her temperature and measured her blood pressure.

The doctor said that it might be pneumonia and told mother she must go to hospital for investigation and cure. But mother wouldn't hear of it.

So the doctor prescribed her injections, a cough-mixture, tablets, mustard plasters and hot-water bottle at the feet.

Next the doctor wrote a note for an X-ray and blood examination. The doctor put down everything she found in my mother's patient's file.

The prescription which the doctor left was made up at the chemist's. We followed the doctor's instruction and in two weeks mother felt much better. I took her to the polyclinic for a check-up. Mother went to the doctor's consulting room and soon she came out. The doctor said she was recovering.

**Phonetic Drill. Train the pronunciation of these words consulting the dictionary**

to fall ill

to be ill

feverish

ache (head ache, tooth ache,.....)

splitting  
to examine  
to measure one's blood pressure  
to feel one's pulse  
to take one's temperature  
blood examination  
to go to hospital  
to go to the hospital  
to treat  
treatment  
to recover  
pneumonia  
x-ray

### **Discussion**

#### **Questions for discussion on the text.**

1. What do you do when your mother felt bad?
2. Did you send for a doctor or did you call for an emergency ambulance?
3. What kind of examination did the doctor do?
4. Why didn't your mother agree with the doctor to be hospitalized?
5. Why did the doctor prescribe an injection?
6. Why should mother go to the polyclinics?
7. Why do patients need to be X-rayed?
8. Why do patients need a sick leave and who needs it?

#### **Exercise 1. Complete the following sentences using the active words.**

1. We send for a doctor when your daughter had a high.....
2. The doctor.....the patient carefully.
3. Every morning the nurse measures the patient's.....
4. I took the.....to the chemist's shop.
5. When your child is coughing you must give him.....
6. When a patient had pneumonia his lung must be.....

#### **Exercise 2. Find out whether these statements true or false.**

1. When a patient was feverish, she had no temperature.
2. The doctor wrote the results of the examination into the patient's file.
3. When the patient had pneumonia he was immediately sent to hospital.
4. The complication of pneumonia isn't very dangerous.
5. Tuberculosis, cancer, heart diseases always take a high toll of human lives.
6. Cancer and heart diseases weren't the leading causes of death in the world.

7. One of the reasons of cancer is the pollution of the environment.
8. New diseases such as HIV and AIDS resurfaced in the last quarter of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

**Exercise 3. Match line A with line B.**

- | A               | B              |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. to examine   | a. pulse       |
| 2. to measure   | b. instruction |
| 3. to feel      | c. throat      |
| 4. to take      | d. temperature |
| 5. to prescribe | e. pressure    |
| 6. to write     | f. patient     |
| 7. to follow    | g. a note      |
| 8. to gargle    | h. medicine    |

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
---	---	---	---	---	---	---	---

**Exercise 4. Find synonyms to the following words.**

1. faint-loss of consciousness
2. ache-pain
3. to prescribe-to write
4. to feel bad-to be ill
5. to faint away-to lose consciousness
6. splitting-terrible
7. poor-bad
8. to feel giddy-to feel dizzy

**Exercise 5. Choose the right order to make up a story.**

1. He had just fallen ill, and fallen seriously ill.
2. Doctor P. ordered a thorough investigation of the patient.
3. He had suddenly fallen ill at the plant where he worked.
4. One day a worker was brought to the hospital.
5. There hadn't been any accident.
6. Doctor Q. examined him, and believing his experience, talent and intuition, he thought that the man must be operated on at once and he was right.
7. The doctor examined the man but couldn't diagnose his illness for sure.

- A. 4,3,5,1,7,6,2.
- B. 4,3,5,1,7,2,6
- C. 2,5,3,6,7,1,4

- D. 4,3,5,1,6,2,7
- E. 5,1,2,4,7,3,6

**Exercise 6. Choose the sentences contradicting the others.**

- A. What to do this Saturday night?
- B. The easiest thing is to go to the cinema on a Saturday night.
- C. Saturday night is the night, because tomorrow is Sunday.
- D. On Sunday you can sleep in.
- E. But the cinemas are crowded on a Saturday night.

**Speaking: Pair work**

1. Under what circumstances we use the proverb “An apple a day keeps the doctor away.”

2. Group discussion.

The duties of a doctor and the oath of Hippocrate

3. Retell the text “At the Doctor’s.” using the following words and phrases and entitle every topic. Whom do these words concern?

A) to be ill, to fall ill, ache, to examine, to send for a doctor.

B) To take one’s temperature, to feel one’s pulse, to listen to one’s heart, to sound one’s lungs, to examine one’s blood pressure, to have a splitting headache.

C) To have a sore throat, high temperature, to check one’s throat, to make an injection, to keep the fever down, to prescribe a medicine, an ear, nose and throat specialist, to make out a prescription.

**Exercise 7. Retell the following “Joke” in indirect speech answering the question “What did the doctor (nursy) say?”**

**Joke**

A boy, who was run over when crossing a street in the wrong place, is brought to a hospital. A doctor with a nurse comes to examine him.

“Nurse”, says the doctor, “ask the boy his name and inform his parents”.

“Doctor”, comes the reply, “he says that his parents know his name well”

**Writing**

**Exercise 1. Write down all necessary things which you should do when you wake up and get up in the morning which affect your health. Use the following words:**

To wake up, to get up, to wash, to bathe, to dress, to take a shower, to do morning exercises, to wash one’s teeth.

## Lesson 3

### IS IT DIFFICULT TO CATCH HIV AND AIDS?

**Exercise 1. Learn the following words:**

**Words:** sore throat, headache, tooth-ache, pains in one's back.

**Grammar Practice.**

**Infinitive-is a non-finite form of a verb**

**Model: Your body has some power to fight disease.**

Tense	Active	Passive
Indefinite	To take	To be taken
Continuous	To be taking	To be being taken
Perfect	To have taken	To have been taken
Perfect continuous	To have been taking	_____

Function of Infinitive in the sentence	
1. subject	To speak English well is not difficult
2. predicative	Our duty is to study well
3. object	Anvar wants to go to London
4. attribute	The house to be built in this street will be very comfortable
5. adverbial of purpose	Coffee is nice to drink

**Exercise 1. Define the function of the infinitive.**

1. To explain the problem we were interested in some diagrams.
2. The question to be discussed at the meeting is very important.
3. One plan is to fulfill this assignment as soon as possible.
4. They are glad to have passed their examinations with excellent marks.
5. To know foreign languages is necessary for students.
6. To prove corrosion of the metal must be covered with paint.
7. He is glad to have begun working at this problem.
8. To drive a car in big cities is very difficult.
9. The article to be translated is rather difficult.
10. Today chemists are to find new methods.

**Exercise 2. Change the structure of the sentence using infinitive.**

**Model: They are in London again. They are pleased.  
They are pleased to be in London again.**

1. Mary is thrilled because she heard that concert.
2. Mr. Brown was annoyed because he saw two boys in his garden.
3. They are ashamed. They were rude.
4. Ann missed her lecture. She is upset.
5. I hear Jane singing. I am very glad.
6. They were late. They were disappointed.
7. Bob was excited. He passed his examination.
8. Malika forgot the date of your wedding she is embarrassed.

**Exercise 3. Use the infinitive in the required form of the active voice.**

1. It seems (to rain) ever since we came here.
2. The man seemed (to teach) me, and I felt uneasy in his presence.
3. The river was reported (to overflow) the banks.
4. The girl pretended (to read) a book and not (to notice) me.
5. The man appears (to know) practically all European languages, he is said (to learn) them while travelling.
6. The idea was too complicated (to express) it just in one paragraph. It seemed it would take not less than a page (to put) it into words.

**Read the following text, translate it into Uzbek or Russian and discuss it in the classroom using the questions given below the text.**

### **IS IT DIFFICULT TO CATCH HIV AND AIDS?**

AIDS and HIV are international problems which touch people in every country of the world. Your body has some power to fight disease. This is called your body's immune system. HIV is a virus to fight disease. HIV can pass from one person to another through sharing needles for drugs. HIV causes AIDS but not everyone who has HIV looks sick. It can take from two to ten or more years before someone who is HIV + becomes sick with AIDS. The only way to find out if someone has HIV is for them to get tested for the virus.

Right now there is no way to cure AIDS. People who become infected with HIV, become sick with AIDS after six months to ten years. Eventually, they die. Scientists around the world are trying to find a cure for AIDS.

**Phonetic Drill. Train to pronounce these words consulting the dictionary.**

1. to fight disease
2. to be infected
3. to weaken
4. virus
5. to catch

6. immune system
7. to share needle
8. to get blood tested
9. to cure (to treat)

### **Discussion (group discussion)**

Try to answer the questions according to the text.

While answering the questions express your opinion using the following expressions:

I am sorry, you are wrong; Certainly you are quite right; I am afraid, you are wrong; Of course, you are right.

#### **Questions:**

1. Everyone can get HIV virus from blood or from an infected person, can't they?
2. Is it dangerous or safe to hug or to kiss a friend who has HIV and AIDS?
3. You can catch AIDS or HIV from coughing or sneezing from someone who has them, can't you?
4. What is the boy's immune system?
5. How do we call a disease which passes from one person to another?
6. Why do we consider that AIDS and HIV are the international problem?

#### **Exercise 1. Say whether these statements true or false.**

1. HIV is a virus that weakens the body's power to fight disease.
2. Scientists of the world found a very efficient treatment for AIDS and HIV.
3. HIV and AIDS can't pass from one person to another through blood.
4. There is no way to cure AIDS now.
5. A mother who has HIV in her body can give the virus to her baby.
6. Everyone who has HIV look sick at the beginning of illness.
7. People who have the HIV virus will be infected for the rest of their lives or until there is a cure.
8. People infected with HIV can't have AIDS.

#### **Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences using the active words.**

1. There is no way.....AIDS all over the world right now.
2. The babies can.....with HIV through.....from the mother's milk or during pregnancy of their mother.
3. HIV can pass from one person to another through.....for drugs.



4. Scientists of the world are trying to find.....for AIDS.
5. The only way to find out if someone has HIV is to get blood tested for the.....
6. HIV is a virus that weakens the body's.....system or power to fight disease.

**Exercise 3. Decipher the following words.**

1. AIDS-
2. HIV-
3. WHO-
4. TB-
5. WMA-
6. PH-
7. BC & BS – Blue Cross and Blue Shield
8. IRC-
9. RMPA-
10. HMOs- Health Maintenance Organisations

**Exercise 4. Make up sentences using the following expressions:” to be down with, to suffer from, to fall ill with.”**

I	_____	flue	heart
Jane	_____	disease	
George	_____	malaria	cancer
_____	_____	pneumonia	
_____	_____	rheumatism	
_____	_____	mumps	
		measles	
		quinsy	
		bronchites	

**Exercise 5. Make up sentences using the words ache, sore and pain.**

I	Have (has) got an awful	Sore, eye, head, ear,
Ann	(a splitting)	foot, tooth, fever, throat,
Bob		stomack, arm, leg,
My son		_____
_____		

**Exercise 6. Change these sentences to make them answer the question “What did you (Ann, Bob, he, the teacher) say?” paying attention to the sequence of tenses.**

**Model: My mother never falls ill.**

**What did you say? I said that my mother never fell ill.**

1. I'll go home, I'm running a high temperature.
2. Ann has never suffered from scarlet fever.
3. My father was taken to hospital last night.
4. Bob had a heart attack yesterday.
5. Salima is one of the best dentists in our city.
6. We must send for the doctor.
7. Jane is going to have her blood examined.
8. Mary has to take this medicine for another week.

**Exercise 7. Choose the sentence expressing the main idea of the passage.**

1. One day a worker was brought to hospital.
2. The doctors examined the man but could not diagnose his illness for sure.
3. Dr. P. ordered a thorough investigation of the patient.
4. Dr. Q. examined him, he thought that the man must be operated on at once.
5. Late that night the man's condition became much worse, and he nearly died.
6. It was Dr. Q. and the nurse on duty managed to save the man's life.
7. A man must be brave and decisive in order to become a doctor.

- A. Doctors examined the patient.
- B. A doctor must be brave and decisive.
- C. Doctors diagnosed the patient.
- D. Dr P. didn't allow Dr Q to operate the patient.
- E. A thorough investigation.

**Exercise 8. Insert articles where it is necessary.**

....story goes back to....middle of...nineteenth century. England was at war. ....Times newspaper published ...a series of articles about...terrible conditions in.....hospitals where.....wounded men were treated. Even .....best hospitals were nothing but old barracks where.....air was very bad. ....floors were broken and.....buildings were full of rats and mice. There were hardly any beds, and men were lying on.....floor in passages, anywhere. There were no clean shirts for.....men, and they lay in their blood-soaked clothes. They were dying in thousands, not so much of their wounds as of illness. ....only nurses were old soldiers who knew nothing of nursing and were quite unable to do.....work.

**Exercise 9. Insert prepositions, given in the box where it is necessary.**

**To, for, at, in, after, from, with**

1. How does your mother look.....his illness?
2. Nick had never suffered.....any stomach trouble.
3. You must take these drops.....the flu.
4. Now the doctor will be sent....
5. Ann will have to keep.....bed and stay.....home.
6. It rained heavily and we didn't get....the station .....time as we were afraid to be soaked.
7. Bob became so irritable.....his illness.
8. My father was down.....pneumonia last month.

**Speaking. Role play.**

**Exercise 1. Combine words given below with the patterns you know to make statements.**

**Model:** Teacher: Quinsy  
Student: I was down with quinsy last week or you know Alec is ill with quinsy.  
Teacher: Headache  
Student: I had a splitting headache last night.

Words: cough, headache, high temperature, toothache, fever, flu, earache, mumps, pneumonia, malaria, heart-attack, rheumatism, bronchitis etc.

**Exercise 2. Learn these dialogues by heart and stage it in the classroom.**

**Dialogue 1**

- What's troubling you, young man? Let me feel your pulse.
- I have a splitting head-ache and a cough
- And what's your temperature? It's not very high I hope?
- No, when I took it last time, it was only 37,6

**Dialogue 2**

- What is Bob down with?
- They say it's mumps.
- If I knew where he lives, I should call on him.
- If I were you, I shouldn't do that. The disease is catching.

**Dialogue 3**

Patient: "Do you extract teeth painlessly?"

Dentist: "Not always-the other day I nearly dislocated my wrist."

**Exercise 3. Answer the questions using the words:- physician, surgeon, oculist, dentist, pediatricist, neurologist.**

What specialist do we consult when

1. we are very nervous
2. our child is ill
3. we have a sore eye
4. you have a bad tooth-ache
5. you have an attack of appendicitis
6. you have a temperature

**Exercise 4. Group discussion.**

**Discuss the following topics in group**

1. AIDS- is the problem of the world
2. HIV- is the disease of the XXI century
3. Four Noes- what are they?
4. The young generation and drug

**Exercise 5 Try to give as many proverbs as possible about “Health”, “Health Service” and about “Doctors” and use them in your story.**

### Writing

**Exercise 1. Change dialogues 1, 2, 3 (given above) into indirect speech in writing.**

Model: (dialogue 3)

What did the patient want to know?

He wanted to know if the doctor extracted teeth painlessly.

The dentist answered that he did it painlessly only sometimes because.....

**Exercise 2. Make up a dialogue and change it or retell it in the 3 rd person singular.**

1. Drug addicted young man.
2. Government’s policy against drugs.

**Exercise 3. Write down**

1. Patient’s complaints
2. Examining a patient

**Exercise 4. Read the jokes and write them down in indirect speech.**

### Joke 1

“Are you feeling ill?” asks the physician. “Let me see your tongue, please”

“It’s no use, doctor,” says the poor patient. “No tongue can tell you how ill I feel.”

### **Joke 2**

“My dear doctor, I suffer much with my eyes!”

“Be patient madam, said he,” “you would probably suffer more without them.”

## **Lesson 4**

### **NATIONAL HEALTH CARE IN GREAT BRITAIN**

**Exercise 1. Look at the pictures and discuss them with your group-mates using the words and questions given below it.**

**Words:** to be situated, to be washed by, to boarder on, (the) coastline of the country, free of charge, free medical care, free paying private clinics.

**II. Phonetic Drill.** Train the pronounce these new words consulting the dictionary.

To be situated, to be washed by, to boarder on, (the) coastline of the country, free of charge, free medical care, free paying private clinics.

**III. Vocabulary.** Learn the following words by heart.

To be situated, to be washed by, to boarder on, (the) coastline of the country, free of charge, free medical care, free paying private clinics.

**IV. Discussion. Questions for discussion.**

1. Where is Great Britain situated? In what continent? What is the official name of the country?

2. How many parts does it consist of? And what are they? Are they separate countries? How do we call them?





3. What can you see in the second picture? What do you know about Health Service in Great Britain? Is it free of charge or fee paying? What do you know about hospital Service?
4. What is the number of emergency call in Great Britain and in Uzbekistan?
5. What is shown in the third picture? Who are they? And what are they doing?
6. Are there any differences between the duties of a doctor in Great Britain and in Uzbekistan? What is your opinion?

### Grammar Practice

#### Construction “to have smth done”

**Model: Ann will have her tooth pulled out.**

#### Exercise 1. Fill in the missing parts of the construction.

1. He is going to have his blood examined.
2. ....will..... lungs X-rayed.
3. Jane must have her .....
4. May will ..... tooth extracted.
5. ....
6. ....
7. Bob .....
8. Nick ..... blood-pressure measured.
9. I am going to have my heart- .....
10. Jack ..... lungs listened to.

**Exercise 2. Complete the following sentences using the construction “to have smth done”**

1. You will have your chest.....
2. Ann will have her blood.....
3. Bob will have his coat.....
4. My mother is going to have her watch.....
5. This boy must have his broken arm.....
6. I want to have my hair.....

**Exercise 3. Make up as many sentences as possible using the expression “to be down with”**

**Model: Ann is down with flue.**

1. .... malaria
2. ....measles
3. ....pneumonia
4. ....rheumatism
5. ....mumps
6. ....splitting haedache

**Read the following text, translate it into Uzbek or Russian and discuss it in the classroom.**

### **NATIONAL HEALTH IN GREAT BRITAIN. THE NATION HEALTH**

The National Health Service Act of 1946 established the socialized health care system that went into effect in 1948. Because citizens were deemed to have a right to free health care, it provided free medical care for all British people regardless of income.

The system covered physician and dental services, prescription drugs, hospital care, eyeglasses and dentures. It provided better health care than most people could previously afford, but the program cost more than anticipated. Therefore, some charges were introduced for prescriptions, dentures and eyeglasses. Nevertheless, costs for the government remained high due to expensive new technologies, as well as the growing demand for services, especially by the increasing number of elderly people.

In Britain, when you're ill, you go to a doctor near your home. Doctors are men and women and you can say who you prefer. You usually only spend about 10 minutes with the doctor. They can usually say what the matter is very quickly and often give you a prescription for some medicine. You will have them made up at the chemist's shop. If not, they may suggest you go to a specialist.

Most people only go to their doctor when they are ill. People with colds and coughs don't go to their doctor but to the chemist to buy medicine.

Doctors only come to your home when you're very ill. In an emergency you can call an ambulance on 999. Friends and relatives visit you in hospital at certain hours of the day, but they don't stay there.

You don't pay for a visit to the doctor or to the hospital in Britain, but when you work you pay a government tax for your medical care. You also pay for prescriptions if you are over 18.

But treatment fees for items such as prescriptions and eyewear have continued to rise for patients in recent decades. Certain patients-including children, pregnant women, the unemployed, those disabled in the armed forces, men over 65 and women over 60-are free from payment or fees. Hospital care remains free. Most doctors, dentists, nurses and health care professionals are members of the National Health Service (NHS), although some see fee-paying private patients outside of the system.

### **Phonetic Drill**

**Train to pronounce these new words consulting the dictionary.**

1. national health service-
2. fee paying-
3. free of charge-
4. income-
5. prescription-
6. denture-
7. chemist's shop-
8. emergency-
9. unemployed-
10. disabled-
11. fee-paying private-

### **Discussion**

#### **Questions for discussion**

1. Is medical service fee paying or free of charge in Great Britain?
2. What services are free of charge in Great Britain, name them?
3. What is the influence of new technologies in the growing demand for services?
4. Where do the English people go when they are ill and is it possible for them to choose a doctor?
5. When do the patients pay for their treatment.
6. What patients may not pay for a medical service?



7. What is NHS? And who are the members of this organization?
8. Whom do some fee-paying private doctors serve? Is the cost of treatment reasonable?

**Exercise 1. Complete the sentences using the active words of the text.**

1. I am not going to give you any.....you have got over your flue and you don't need any medicine.
2. Nowadays most people prefer to go to a.....private clinics (doctors) for a medical service.
3. When there is a sudden sharp pain in your stomach you must call an.....ambulance.
4. I'll prescribe you a sleeping draught which you may take at the policlinic's.....shop.
5. Medical service for the.....disabled in the armed forces are free of charge.
6. Children, pregnant women, men over 65 and women over 60 can enjoy.....service.

**Exercise 2. Choose the right word.**

a) ill-sick

1. When people are.....and have a temperature of over 39 degrees we say they are in a high fever.

2. When I go on board a ship or a boat, I feel.....

b) to treat-to cure

1. The open air life in the country.....him of his headache .

2. The doctor said that if I followed his instructions, I should soon be.....of the disease.

c) illness-disease

1. The flue, scarlet fever and measles are catching.....

2. His.....prevented him from going to school together with his friends.

**Exercise 3. Answer the questions using the words: blind, lame, deaf and dumb, short (long)-sighted.**

When is a man unable

1. to play football?
2. to become a sportsman?
3. to cross the street alone?
4. to speak?
5. to read a newspaper at long
6. or short distance

**Exercise 4. Find synonyms to the following words from the text.**

1. to be out of job-
2. invalid-
3. an urgent call-
4. one's own clinic-
5. cure-
6. free medical care-

**Exercise 5. Paraphrase the underlined words with the active words from the text.**

1. Number 03 is an urgent call
2. There are many doctors who have their own clinics
3. There is no treatment to such diseases as cancer AIDS and HIV.
4. Old aged men and women in Great Britain enjoy medical service free of charge.
5. Those people who are out of job can have a medical service free of charge.
6. There is a special care for the invalid children in Great Britain.

**Exercise 6. Fill in prepositions or adverbs.**

1. When the baby had a high temperature, we shall have to send.....a children's doctor.
2. When the doctor arrived.....his place, he examined the patient. The doctor told him to open his mouth because he wanted to see his tongue and throat. Then the doctor listened.....his heart and lungs and said: "It's just the flu. Stay....bed, eat plenty.....of fruit and vegetables, drink some green tea.....lemon and.....a few days you will be all right again. I'll give a bottle.....medicine which will help you."
3. Bob was operated.....his heart .....suffering.....severe heart diseases.
4. What is the matter .....you Bob? I have pains.....my stomach.

**Exercise 7. Insert articles where necessary.**

I heard of...country doctor who lived in...mountains nearby. I went to see him and told him.....whole story.

In order to save time I diagnosed my case struck myself below.....knee to make my foot kick, sounded my chest and stuck out my tongue.

He lit his pipe and looked at me for about three minutes. "Brother," he said after...while, "you are in..... pretty bad state. There is.....chance for you to get well again, but it is.....very slight one."

"What can it be?" I asked eagerly. "I have taken medicines, exercises, baths, rest. Is there anything left in.....medical books?"

“Somewhere in these mountains” said.....doctor, there is.....plant growing.....flowering plant, that’ll cure you and it’s about.....only thing that will.

**Exercise 8. Match line A with line B**

**Find an adjective in the list B to fit each noun in list A.**

**A) noun**

- 1. eyesight
- 2. headache
- 3. equipment
- 4. blood-pressure
- 5. disease
- 6. cheek
- 7. health
- 8. treatment

**B) adjective**

- a. splitting
- b. swollen
- c. high
- d. infectious
- e. perfect
- f. poor
- g. mud
- h. medical

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.

**Exercise 9. Here are 4 columns with the titles:**

1. *At a dentist’s;* 2. *At an oculist’s;* 3. *At a surgeon’s;* 4. *At a throat specialist’s.* **And you must fill in each column with the words concerning them.**

**Speaking**

**Exercise 1. Listen to the following jokes and retell them.**

Joke 1.

A little girl’s father was confined to his bed with influenza and his wife had been very busy sterilizing all his dishes.

“Why do you do that, mummy?” asked the little girl. “Because dear, Daddy has germs get on the dishes he uses. I boil the dishes and that kills the germs”

The little girl reflected a moment or two and then said: “Mammy, why not boil Daddy and get rid of the germs all at once?”

**Joke**

Doctor: “What your husband needs, Mrs Brown, is a complete rest. I have prescribed a sleeping draught.”

Mrs Brown: “Very well, doctor. When shall I give it to him?”

Doctor: “Don’t give it to him. Take it yourself.”

**Exercise 2. Read the sayings and explain them.**

1. Prevention is better than cure.
2. Health is not valued till sickness comes.

**Exercise 3. Compose a dialogue.**

1. At the Dentist's.
2. Consulting a Doctor.
3. Patient's Complaints.
4. At the Chemist's.

**Exercise 4. Give the correct answer: What do you have to do if.....**

1. You break your leg?
2. You have an abscess?
3. You have a high temperature?
4. You have liver trouble?
5. You have a kidney trouble?
6. You have AIDS or HIV?
7. You have lung disease?
8. You have pain in your leg or arm?

**Exercise 5. Topics for pair work.**

1. Your little sister has got a splinter in her foot, hand, palm, finger.
2. You have undergone an operation.
3. An accident you have witnessed.
4. You have sprained your arm.

**Exercise 6. Learn the following dialogues and retell it in the 3<sup>rd</sup> person singular.**

**Dialogue 1**

- May I come in, doctor?
- What is the matter with you, my boy?
- Something is wrong with my knee. It hurts.
- Let me have a look at it. Hm.. It's a splinter. You've come just in time to avoid an infection and an abscess.
- When can the bandage be removed? Can I do it myself tomorrow morning?
- If you do, dirt will get in, the knee will swell up and you'll have to be operated on.

**Dialogue 2**

- Hallo! What's happened to you? You're all plastered up. One can hardly recognize you!

- Oh, Jack, it's a very long story. I had a bad fall from the rock that's near the lake.
- Incredible! And you are alive?!
- Yes, but my leg is broken, my shoulder is dislocated. My whole body is scratched and two teeth are missing.

### Writing

#### Exercise 1. Write an essay about:

1. Health service in Great Britain.
2. Medical service is free of charge.

**Exercise 2. Write about:** Who can enjoy free medical treatment in Great Britain.

#### Exercise 3. Describe the symptoms of the following diseases.

1. menseals
2. flue
3. mumps
4. scarlet fever
5. blood pressure

## Lesson 5

### BETTER HEALTH CARE IN AMERICA

Read the following text, translate it into Uzbek or Russian and discuss it in the classroom.

The Federal Department of Health Education, and Welfare (now the Department of Health and Human Services) was created in 1953, it underwrote the construction of hospitals and clinics and provided funds for medical research. Medicare and Medicaid were added to the Social Security laws in the mid – 1960s to offer medical care to the elderly and to the neddy.

Medicare Health Insurance. The medicare program, established in 1966 provides health insurance coverage for Americans above the retirement age of 65...

Access to modern medicine also began to equalize with the new Deal. After 1935 the Social Securty Administration began to provide medical aid to children, pregnant women, and the disabled. During this time, private, commercial health insurance began to be developed. In 1929 a group of school teachers in Dallas, Texas,contracted with a local hospital to provide health coverage for a fixed fee. Shortly there after the American Hospital Associ-

ation created Blue Cross and Blue Shield to offer health, insurance organization (HMOS) were developed in the 1940s but did not become widespread until the 1980 s.

### Exercise 1. Phonetic Drill.

Train the pronunciation of the following words consulting the dictionary.

1. welfare [welfɛə]
2. medicare [medɪkɛə]
3. medicaid [medɪkeɪd]
4. insurance [ɪnʃʊəns]
5. access [əkseɪs]
6. coverage [kʌvərɪdʒ]
7. to provide [prəvaɪd]
8. coverage insurance [kʌvərɪdʒ ɪnʃʊərəns]

**Exercise 2. Learn the new words given above in the “Phonetic Drill” by heart and use them in your own sentences.**

**Exercise 3. Here are some verbs to use with the new words given above in the “Phonetic Drill” and make up sentences or situations of your own**

**Model: Government began to provide medical aid to children free of charge**

- |                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. to offer     | 3. to contract |
| 2. to establish | 4. to provide  |

Grammar Practice

Past Indefinite Tense – expresses an action which took place in the past

**Model: Ann graduated from the University of Oxford in 1999**

**Exercise 1. Replace the infinitives in brackets by Past Indefinite or Future in the Past.**

1. It (to be) in February 1912 that I first ( to meet) Ernest Everhard when he ( to come) to our house, as a guest.

2. William and Potts a policeman (to work out) an electric light system that (to allow) him to control three street intersections from one town in 1920 in Detroit.

3. Richard Gordon (to leave) medical practice in 1952 and (to start ) writing the “Doctor” series.

4. Gordon (to walk) down the stairs as if he had just finished an eight round fight.
5. Harper Lee (to be born) in 1921. In 1949 she ( to graduate) from the University of Alabama.
6. Names or parts of names from other languages sometimes show who (to inhabit) the place in the past.
7. The New Constitution of the Republic of Uzbekistan (to be adopted)on December 8, 1992.
8. The first Olympic games (to be hold) in Greece in 776 BC
9. Rugby (to be) a kind of football which ( to appear) in 1859 is aWelsh national sport.
10. It (to be) very difficult for them ( to climb) the mountain as it (to be) very steep.

**Exercise 2. Replace the Infinitives in brackets by Present, Past or Future Tense.**

1. Some centuries ago people (to travel) in carriages
2. Latin (to be) a dead languages now but it (to be) the International language some four centuries ago
3. In ancient Rome people (to use) sticks of bone or metal with a pointed end for writing on a waxed tablets.
4. The instructor (to point) out that only the best sportsmen (to take) part in the All- Union competitions.
5. Ann (to begin) her story hesitatingly but Jane (to know) that she (to tell) her everything no matter how difficult it (to be) for her.
6. Al Khorazmiy, a great Uzbek scientist, was born in 783 in Khorazm.
7. The surgeon (to say) that he (to operate on) the patient only in case of his relatives (to give) their consent.
8. One type of football in which the players (to carry) the oval ball in their hand(to appear) in 1859 and it is called Rugby.

**Discussion**

**Questions for discussion on the text.**

- 1) Who is in charge of building hospitals and clinics in the USA?
- 2) What is the function of the Federal Department of Health Education and welfare?
- 3) How is it called now?
- 4) Is medicare free of charge or fee paying in the USA?
- 5) What does the Social Security Administration provide medical aid?
- 6) Why did the teachers of Dallas and Texas sign a contract with a Local hospital? What do they mean by fixed fee?
- 7) What is the function of Blue Cross and Blue Shield in the USA?

- 8) What do they mean by fixed fee?
- 9) What is Health Insurance in the USA?
- 10) What is private commercial health insurance?

**Exercise 4. Find synonyms to the following words from the text.**

- 1) well-being – welfare
- 2) way to a place – access
- 3) medical treatment for old people – medicare
- 4) safeguard against loss – insurance
- 5) aid – care

**Exercise 5. Match adjectives of line A with nouns of line B.**

A- adj.

B- noun

- 1) fixed
- 2) medical
- 3) blue
- 4) welfare
- 5) health
- 6) modern
- 7) pregnant
- 8) disabled

- a. insurance
- b. woman
- c. children
- d. fee
- e. Cross
- f. department
- g. care
- h. medicine

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8

**Insert article where it is necessary.**

I want to be ... nurse. ... good trained nurse. It is ... nurse who is near ... person who is ill; it is she , her kind word, her kind look, that may be of great help to ... person who is suffering, may be even dying. Remember all those brave nurses who saved hundreds of thousands of men ... Great Patriotic war; and you must always be ready to help your country . It is ... district nurse that during ... first period of ... child's life helps its mother to bring it up strong and healthy. I think ... work of ... nurse is just ... work for ... woman

**Exercise 6. Insert prepositions given in the box where it necessary:**

**at, of, in, for, from, to.**

- 1) His failure ... the exam meant he couldn't apply ... the job in London.
- 2) I'm fond ... skiing that I go .... which every winter.
- 3) London is famous ... its black taxis and red buses
- 4) The Evins are not very good ... football





Ali liked to sleep and he couldn't get up early in the morning. He often went to school without having his breakfast in order not to be late ignoring his mother's warnings he didn't even have a cup of tea.

Now he has got a stomachache. He has consulted a lot of doctors and has taken a lot of medicine but still he feels bad. He would give worlds to be healthy again.

- A. Wealth is nothing without health.
- B. Healthy mind in a healthy body.
- C. Health is not valued until sickness comes.
- D. An apple a day keeps the doctor away.
- E. Early to bed, early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

**Exercise 3. Choose one of these topics and make a group discussion.**

1. Medicare in the USA (in Uzbekistan).
2. Insurance offices in Uzbekistan (in the USA)
3. Medical Aid in the USA.

**Exercise 4. Listen to the following jokes and retell them.**

#### **Joke 1**

The school mistress questions John, a boy with a very alert look.  
“Let's hear John! If I say to you, I am beautiful, what tense is it?”  
“Past tense, madam”

#### **Joke 2**

Basil was doing his bird imitations at the Browns' party and their cat got at him. And now he had to go to the doctor's.

**Exercise 4. Learn the following dialogues and stage them in the classroom.**

#### **Dialogue 1**

Student: How is it, doctor that I always catch a cold in my head?

Doctor: It's a well-known principle, my boy, that a cold is most likely to settle in the weakest spot.

#### **Dialogue 2**

Mrs. Smith: “Doctor, are you sure this is pneumonia? Sometimes doctors prescribe for pneumonia and the patient die of something else”

Doctor: “When I prescribe for pneumonia, you'll die of pneumonia.”

## Writing

### Exercise 1. Write about:

a) Who can enjoy free medical treatment in the USA?

### Exercise 2.

a) Why most people prefer fee paying treatment than free of charge.

### Exercise 3. Write an essay about:

1. Health Service in the USA.
2. Medical Service is Fee Paying

**Exercise 4. Write down the dialogues 1 and 2 given above in indirect speech answering the question: What did the student complain of?**

### Exercise 5. Phonetic Drill.

**Train the pronunciation of the following words consulting the dictionary.**

1. to take a high toll of human lives.
2. to attribute
3. sharp (increase)
4. susceptible – impressionable
5. contagious kən'teidʒəs – catching infectious
6. tuberculosis – lung disease
7. drug resistant strains
8. to further
9. high- fat food
10. high- caloric snacks
11. unhealthy life style
12. pollution
13. to wipe out- stamp(ed) out
14. to halt – combat
15. to nip the disease in the bud

**Exercise 6. Learn the new words given above in “Phonetic Drill” by heart, find them in the text, read these sentences and translate them into Uzbek or Russian and use them in your own sentences too.**

**Exercise 7. Read the following text, translate it into Uzbek or Russian and discuss it in the classroom making a group discussion (debate), questions are given below the text.**

**Exercise 8. Diseases Which Take a High Toll of Human Lives US Tuberculosis Cases.**

Diseases which take a high toll of human lives are; tuberculosis, cancer, heart diseases, AIDS and HIV. The number of new cases of tuberculosis in the United States is growing since 1980. But many researchers attribute the sharp increase of cases in the early 1990s syndrome (AIDS). People with AIDS have weakened immune systems and are particularly susceptible to contagious diseases such as tuberculosis. Poorly supervised treatment of tuberculosis also led to an increase in drug-resistant strains of the bacteria that cause tuberculosis, furthering the spread of the disease. Renewed emphasis on control and prevention has brought the incidence of tuberculosis to record low levels since those days of miracle drugs had been invented. However, the rates for cancer have risen, despite considerable improvements in treatment. Cancer of death in the United States at the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century in part due to the ageing of the American population and the successes in curing other diseases. Another reason of appearing of these diseases is more common, is the unhealthy lifestyle of many Americans, who eat high-fat foods and high calorie snacks and do not exercise enough. In addition, pollution is a suspected cause of cancer.

Cancer and heart disease were the leading causes of death in United States at the end of the 20<sup>th</sup> century.

Additionally, new diseases emerged and old diseases resurfaced in the last quarter of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. The most serious of the new diseases was Acquired immuno deficiency syndrome (AIDS) in 1995 it ranked as the eighth leading cause of death in the United States, but it has since declined significantly. Some diseases – such as tuberculosis, thought to be nearly wiped out because of antibiotics – developed resistance to drugs most commonly used to treat it. But cases of tuberculosis increased during the 1980s, and decreased only after 1991, when the government started taking aggressive steps to halt the increase.

### **Exercise 9. Discussion.**

#### **Questions for discussion on the text.**

1. “What is the meaning of the expression to take a high toll of human lives” and what kind of diseases are they?
2. What kind of new diseases spread in the early 1990s?
3. What kind of measures brought the case of TB to a lower level?
4. But what made increase such new diseases as cancer, heart diseases, AIDS and HIV?
5. What kind of diseases wiped out but what made increase tuberculosis in 1980s?

6. What is the governments' aggressive step to halt the increase of such diseases?

**Exercise 10. Say whether these statements true or false**

1. People with AIDS have strong immune systems in order to fight with all catching diseases.

2. The government took urgent steps to halt the increase of tuberculosis in the country.

3. Miracle drugs had been invented by the scientists of the world in order to prevent the spread of tuberculosis in the countries.

4. New diseases such as AIDS and HIV emerged in the country at the end of 19<sup>th</sup> century.

5. Cancer and heart diseases were the leading causes of death at the beginning of the 21<sup>st</sup> century in the world .

6. Healthy lifestyle of many American people causes sharp increase of heart diseases and cancer.

7. Pollution of the environment is one of the main suspected causes of cancer.

8. The cases of tuberculosis increased during the 1980s and are going to develop now too.

**Exercise 11. Complete the following sentences using the words of the text.**

1. The USA government started taking emergency steps .... the cases of AIDS and HIVS.

2. Such diseases as AIDS and HIVS, tuberculosis and scarlet fever, flu, mumps are considered to be ... diseases.

3. Malaria plague chicken-pox, cholera, are the diseases which .... altogether in our country.

4. The Uzbek people used to eat ... in their every day life. And their stomach got used to it.

5. Before going to bed some people especially Uzbek people got used to eating .... dishes though the doctors prohibit to do so.

6. Main emphasis is laid on ..... or prophylactics of such diseases as measles, malaria, TB, scarlet fever and so on.

7. Periodical medical examinations conducted by local policlinics helps the population to nip a disease (TB, HIV, AIDS) in the bud before it has taken root.

8. As they say ..... of environment causes some contagious diseases such as cancer, diphtheria, typhoid fever and so on.

**Exercise 12. Make up sentences using the following synonyms.**

1. lung disease – tuberculosis
2. infectious}- contagious
3. to stamp out – to wipe out
4. ache- pain
5. illness- disease
6. to combat-to halt
7. to be laid up-to be down with
8. to keep to bed – to hop into bed
9. to cure- to treat
10. to resurface-appear

**Exercise 13. Make up sentences using the following synonyms.**

1. curable-incurable
2. healthy- unhealthy
3. pollution-cleaness
4. high temperature- low temperature
5. high colorie food-dietary food
6. suspected-unsuspecting
7. life-death
8. low level-high level
9. increase-decrease
10. resistable-irresistible

**Exercise 14. Insert articles where necessary.**

1. My favourite newspaper ..... Guardian.
2. Anna was born in ..... Italy but she lives in ....USA now.
3. Last month I saw .... film and then went to ... concert.  
....film was brilliant but .... concert was boring.
4. .. Hilton Hotel is situated near .. River Thames.
5. I have ... appointment at ... dentist's this afternoon.
6. ... Tower of London is .... popular tourist attraction.
7. Newcastle is ... town in ... North of ... England.
8. The supermarket is in ... Kendell Street opposite ... Loyds Bank.
9. .... Sales Manager has .. cold, so he can't come to ... meeting this  
afternoon.
10. .... National Park was opened .... last week by ... mayor.
11. She bought ... expensive necklace at ... Harrods.
12. .... Tate Gallery is quite far from ... Science Museum, so you'd better  
take a bus.

**Exercise 15. Insert the following prepositions given where it is necessary.**

in, of, after, with, for, to, at, about, on

1. Today .... Britain there is disagreement .... how children should be taught to be polite. 2. "A and An" are used only ... singular countable nouns to talk ..... indefinite things. 3. Unfortunately, father got the blame, as he had been responsible .... the organization ..... the trip. 4. He has ... sunstroke ..... spending too much time ..... the beach. 5. My mother used to get angry ..... him though, because he would leave me alone to look .... the shop while he went to talk ... his friends .... the pub. 6. My grandfather turned ... me and introduced the man ... me. 7. He was my grandfather's brother who had moved .... Australia ... the war and they hadn't seen each other ..... 20 years. 8. On Sundays they all go ... church and ... the afternoon they visit .... children's grandparents.

**Exercise 16. Choose the word that doesn't match.**

1. knee, arm, foot, ankle, toe, heel.
2. branch, leaves, root, bark, tree, body.

**Exercise 17. Choose the most general word.**

1. mouth, uvula, teeth, tongue, lips, palate.

### **Speaking. Pair work**

**Exercise 1. Here are some words, using them in your speech make up dialogues.**

a) a sick-leave, examination, headache, to sneeze, to prescribe a medicine, to complain, splitting, chemist.

b) to suffer from sleeplessness, to have a bad cough, to take pills for headache, to see one's tongue, to examine one's throat, to take one's temperature, to feel one's pulse, to have a pain in the chest.

**Exercise 2. Under what circumstances we use the proverb and make a group discussion:**

1. Early to bed, early to rise makes a man healthy, wealthy and wise.

**Exercise 3. The questions for group discussion and answer them.**

1. Why must one go to the dentist regularly?
2. Have you ever suffered from a bad toothache and what did you do about it?
3. What do you have to do if you are short-sighted, (long-sighted)? What must we do to get a pair of eye-glasses?
4. What must old (young) people do to keep in good health?
5. What made professor M.Kamilov's name famous?

6. When do people use iodine?

**Exercise 4. Suggested topics for discussion**

1. A visit to a sick friend (dialogue)
2. A visit to a throat (nerve, lung, ... ) specialist.
3. Coming back to the office after being ill.
4. The way you were treated for the flue...
5. The way someone nursed you when you were ill.

**Exercise 5. a) Read the sayings and explain them .**

1. Prevention is better than cure.
  2. One man's meat is another man's poison.
- b) Imagine situations to illustrate the sayings. Learn the sayings by heart.

**Exercise 6. Choose the title to the passage.**

I think the telephone is really a useful thing.

All businessmen say it is. But I do not know how to use it especially when I am too nervous ... Imagine you want to see a man who lives far from you. You look at the telephone and try to phone him. And when at last you manage to talk to him you think that telephone is really a useful thing.

- A. The early days of the telephone.
- B. A telephone conversation.
- C. Telephone is for businessmen.
- D. A conversation with your friend.
- E. Telephone is a useful thing.

**Exercise 7. Read the jokes expressively. Retell them first in direct speech, then in indirect speech.**

**Joke 1**

Doctor: Well, did you take my advice and sleep with all the windows open?

Patient: Yes, doctor.

Doctor: Good! And you've lost that cold you had?

Patient: No, doctor. Only my best suit and my watch and chain.

**Joke 2**

Doctor: "You cough more easily this morning".

Patient: I should. I've been practicing all night.

**Writing**

**Exercise 1. Write an essay about:**

1. The diseases which take a toll of human lives nowadays.



2. The diseases which were wiped out altogether.

**Exercise 2. Write an essay on the topic Prevention and prophylactics using the proverb."An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure."**

**Exercise 3. Write the following dialogue in indirect speech.**

### **Dialogue**

Dilmurod: What's wrong with you?

Karim: I've got a splitting headache. It's unbearable. I can't withstand it.

Dilmurod: What a pity! I'm sorry to hear that. I think you should consult a doctor immediately.

Karim: Oh, no I would like to buy me some medicine of my headache, will you?

Dilmurod: With pleasure.

---

---

## DICTIONARY

### A

- abbey – abbatlik – аббатство  
abdication – tonish – отречение  
accommodate – moslashmoq – приспособлявать(ся)  
accompanied – kuzatuvchi – сопровождаемый  
accomplish – bajarimoq – выполнять  
activities – ish, faoliyat – деятельность, активность  
ad – e’lon, reklama – объявление; реклама  
adjacent – yonma-yon joylashgan – расположенный рядом  
advantages – yutuq va kamchiliklar – преимущества и недостатки  
aerobics – aerobika – аэробика  
afford – qila olmoq, qurbi yetmoq – быть в состоянии; позволить себе  
agreement (on) – shartnoma – соглашение  
air-conditioning – havo haroratini bir xilda saqlash – кондиционирование  
воздуха  
airport – aeroport – аэропорт  
alley – tor ko’cha, xiyobon – узкая улица; аллея  
allow – ijizat bermoq, ruxsat bermoq – позволять; разрешать  
altitude – balandlik – высота  
ancient – qadimiy – древний; старинный,  
anniversary – yillik (yubiley, marosim) – годовщина; юбилей  
apartment – xona – комната  
appoint – tayinlamoq – назначить  
aqua – suv – вода; раствор; жидкость  
armchairs – kreslo – кресла  
arrange – tashkil etmoq – организовать  
arrival – kelish, yetib kelish – прибытие  
arrive (in, at) – yetib kelmoq – приехать; прибывать  
artist – rassom – художник  
assume – o’z mas’uliyatiga olmoq – взять под свою ответственность  
at once – darhol – сразу  
atmosphere – sharoit – атмосфера  
attract – (diqqat-e’tiborini) o’ziga tortmoq, jalb qilmoq – привлекать,  
притягивать  
availability – yaroqlilik, foydalilik – годность; полезность

## В

banquet – banket, rasmiy ziyofat – банкет  
barbershop – sartaroshxona – парикмахерская  
beach – plyaj – пляж  
beforehand – oldindan – преждевременный  
bellhop – xat-xabar eltuvchi (mehmonxonada) – коридорный или посыльный (в гостинице, отеле)  
bicycle – velosiped – велосипед  
bilateral relations – ikki tomonlama munosabatlar – двусторонние отношения  
booking – buyurtma – заказ  
booking office – билет kassasi – билетная касса  
books sales – kitoblar savdosi – книжная торговля  
boston – boston (raqsning bir turi) – вальс – бостон  
bottom – pastki qism – нижняя часть  
boutique – ayollar kiyimlarini sotadigan kichkina do'koncha – магазин модной одежды  
bowling – kegli o'yini – игра в кегли  
bridges of friendship – do'stlik ko'prigi – мост дружбы  
bright manifestation of their feeling – o'z hissiyotlarini yorqin ifodalash – выражение своих чувств ярко  
budget – byudjet – бюджет; финансовая смета  
business – biznes (savdo-sotiq bilan shug'ullanish) – бизнес, коммерческая деятельность  
business management centre – tadbirkorlikni boshqarish markazi – центр управления бизнесом

## С

cabin – alohida xona (kemada) – каюта (в корабле)  
Cabinet of Ministers – Vazirlar Mahkamasi – Кабинет министров  
calculuses – hisobidan – исчисления  
camp – oromgoh – лагерь  
capture – bosib olish, ishg'ol qilish – захват  
card – tashrif qog'oz – визитная карточка  
carriage – tashish, olib borish – перевозка  
carry – tashimoq, ko'tarib olib bormoq – нести; носить  
casinos – qimorxona – казино  
certain – aniq, ma'lum – точный, определенный  
channels – kanallar – каналы  
charges – chiqimlar – расходы

chart – grafik, jadval – график, таблица  
chic – hasham, zebolik, go‘zallik – шик; изящество; элегантность  
city – (katta) shahar – город (большой город)  
clad – chim yotqizilgan – планированный  
climbing – (tepalikka) ko‘tarilish, chiqish – подъем; поднятие  
clothing – ust-bosh, kiyim – одежда, платье  
cocktail – kokteyl – коктейль  
combination – birikish, qo‘shilish – соединение, сочетание  
combine – birlashtirmoq – соединять  
combine – qo‘shilmoq, birlashmoq – соединяться, объединять(ся)  
comfort – qulaylik, qulay sharoit – комфорт, удобства  
commitments – vazifalar, majburiyatlar – задачи; обязанности  
compete – raqobatlashmoq – соревноваться  
computer training – kompyuter savodxonligi – компьютерная подготовка (грамотность)  
conditioning – qulay sharoit yaratish – создание соответствующих условий (для чего-л.)  
conduct – boshqarma, boshqaruv – руководство; управление  
conferences – konferensiya – конференция  
confirm – tasdiqlamoq – утверждать  
consist – iborat bo‘lmoq – заключаться (ib – в чем-л.)  
construct – qurmoq, barpo etmoq – строить, сооружать; воздвигать  
consumer goods – ehtiyoj tovarlar – потребительские товары  
continent – qit’a – континент; материк  
contradiction – qarama-qarshilik – противоречие  
controversial – munozarali – спорный  
convenience – qulaylik – пригодность  
conveniences – maishiy qulaylik, shinamlik – удобство; комфорт  
convenient – qulay, shinam – удобный; подходящий  
cooperation – hamkorlik – сотрудничество  
cost – baho, narx – цена; стоимость (тж. перен.)  
cotton picking machines – paxta teradigan mashina – хлопкоборочная машина  
countryside – qishloq joy – сельская местность  
couple – juft, ikki, ikkita (bo‘lib) – пара; два; двое  
court ceremonies – sud marosimlari – судебная церемония  
courtiers – saroy xizmatchisi – слуги дворца  
craft – kasb-hunar – ремесло  
create – yaratmoq – производить  
crude – ishlov berilmagan, tozalanmagan – необработанный; неочищенный  
cultural exchange – madaniy hamkorlik – культурный обмен

## D

daily – har kungi, kundalik – ежедневный; повседневный  
dangerous – xavfli – опасный  
dedicate (to) – bag‘ishlamoq – посвящать  
degree – [digri:] – ilmiy daraja – звание; ученая степень  
deliver – yetkazib bermoq – поставлять  
deluxe – dabdabali, hashamatli, serhasham – пышный; роскошный; шикарный  
demilitarization – harbiysizlanish – демилитаризация  
department – bo‘lim, qism – отдел, отделение  
departure – jo‘nash, jo‘nab ketish – отъезд; уход  
deposit – depozit, qo‘shilgan ulush – depozit, qo‘shilgan ulush – депозит; вклад  
depth – chuqurlik – глубина  
design – mo‘ljallamoq – предназначать  
designed – loyiha asosida qilingan – соответствующий плану; проекту и т. п.; выполненный по плану, проекту  
destinations – (sayohat) maqsadi – цель (путешествия, похода)  
detail – tafsilot, ikir-chikir, mayda-chuyda – подробность; деталь; тонкость  
development – rivojlanish, o‘shish – развитие; расширение; развертывание; рост  
differ – farq qilmoq – отличаться (from – от кого-л., чего-л.; in – в чем-л.)  
different – turli, har xil – различный, разный  
differential – farq qiluvchi – дифференциальный  
direct exchange – to‘g‘ridan-to‘g‘ri almashtirish – прямой обмен  
directly – to‘g‘ridan-to‘g‘ri, bevosita – прямо; в прямом направлении  
disadvantages – noqulay sharoit – неблагоприятные условия  
disarmament – qurolsizlanish – разоружение  
discovery – [disk v ri] – kashfiyot – открытие  
distribute – tarqatmoq – распределять  
disturbances – to‘palon, tartibsizlik – волнения; беспорядки  
diverse – farq qiladigan – отличие  
downtown – shaharning pastki qismi – нижняя часть города  
dryer – quritadigan – абсорбент  
duke – gersog – герцог

## E

economic liberalization – iqtisodga oid keng fikrlilik – экономическая либерализация  
efficiently – oqilona, aql bilan, to‘g‘ri – рационально; разумно  
electricity – elektr nuri – электричество

elimination – yo‘q qilish, barbod qilish – ликвидация  
emblematic – ramziy – символический  
emphasis – ifodalalik – выразительность  
employ – vazifa, belgilangan maqsad – назначение, цель  
enjoy – rohatlanmoq, lazzatlanmoq (nimadandir) – получать удовольствие (от чего – л.)  
enjoyable – yoqimli, rohatbaxsh – приятный, доставляющий удовольствие  
enshrine – saqlamoq – сохранять  
ensure – kafolat bermoq – гарантировать, обеспечивать  
enterprises – korxonalar – производство, учреждения, предприятия  
entertainment – ko‘ngil ochadigan, vaqtini chog‘ qiladigan tadbirlar: a) (mehmonlarni) qabul qilish; kecki bazm, ziyofat; b) estrada konserti – развлекательное мероприятие: а) прием (гостей); вечер; вечеринка б) эстрадный концерт  
enthusiasm – havas – увлечение  
envoy – yuborilgan odam – посланный человек)  
equipment – jihoz – оборудование  
especially – ayniqsa, birinchi navbatda – особенно; в особенности; главным образом  
establish – tiklamoq, barpo etmoq – устанавливать  
European – yevropacha – европейский  
exclusive – inkor etuvchi – исключаящий  
exhibition – ko‘rgazma – выставка  
expand – kengaymoq, keng tarqalmoq – растягивать(ся); расширять(ся)  
expensive – qimmat, qimmat turadigan – дорогой, дорогостоящий  
experience – (hayotiy) tajriba – (жизненный) опыт  
explorer – tadqiqotchi – исследователь  
exquisite – olifta, bashang, o‘ziga bino qo‘ygan – денди; франт; самодовольный хлыщ  
external – doimiy, abadiy – наружный; внешний

## F

facade – fasad (binoning old tomoni) – фасад (здания)  
furniture – mebel, uy jihozlari – мебель; обстановка  
facility – qulay sharoit, imtiyoz, yengillik – благоприятные условия; льготы  
fastest – eng tez – наискорейший  
feature – o‘ziga xos xususiyat, fazilat – особенность; характерная черта  
fertilizers – o‘g‘itlar – удобрения  
field of construction – qurilish sohasi – область строения  
flight – uchish, reys – полет; рейс  
floating – suzuvchi, suzib (qalqib) yuruvchi – плавающий; плавучий

fly – 1) uchish; 2) uchmoq – 1) полет; 2) летать; пролетать  
food product – oziq-ovqat mahsulotlari – пищевые продукты  
foreign investors – chet el sarmoyadorlari – зарубежные инвесторы  
foreign partner – chet ellik sheriklar – иностранные партнёры  
four – star – to‘rt yulduzli – четырехзвездочный  
free of charge – bepul, tekin – бесплатно; даром  
fresh – yangi, toza (oldin ishlatilmagan) – свежий; чистый (не бывший в употреблении)  
full-length – boshdan-oyoq, to‘liq ravishda – во всю длину; в полный рост  
funding issues – mablag‘ yig‘ish ishlari – фондовые дела  
furnished – mebellar bilan jihozlangan – меблированный

## G

generally – odatda, ko‘pincha – обычно; как правило  
golf – golf – гольф  
graduation – oliy o‘quv yurtini (universitet yoki institutni) tugatish – окончание учебного заведения (университета или института)  
guaranteed – kafolatlangan – гарантированный

## H

had to admit – iqror bo‘lishga to‘g‘ri keldi – пришлось признать  
health – sog‘lik – здоровье  
heat – issiq, issiqlik, harorat – жара; жар; тепло  
heavy – og‘ir, vazmin – тяжелый; тяжеловесный  
heir – merosxo‘r – наследник  
high attestation commission – Oliy attestatsiya komissiyasi – Высшая аттестационная комиссия  
highway – katta yo‘l – большая дорога  
hike – uzoq sayohat; ekskursiya, piyoda sayr qilish – длительная прогулка; экскурсия; путешествие пешком  
hiking – turizm – туризм  
hip – yon tomon – бок  
holiday – maker – dam oluvchi; sayohatchi – отдыхающий; турист  
hospitality – mehmondo‘stlik – гостеприимство  
hotel – mehmonxona – гостиница; отель  
housekeeping – uy-ro‘zg‘or ishlari – домашнее хозяйство  
however – qanday bo‘lmasin – как бы ни  
hurry up – shoshmoq, shoshilmoq – торопиться; спешить  
hypnotic – uxlatadigan – снотворный

## I

imaginary – tasavvurdagi – воображаемый  
imagine – tasavvur qilmoq – воображать; представлять себе  
impart – fikr almashmoq – обмениваться мнениями  
impeccable – dog‘ tushmagan, benuqson – безгрешный; непорочный  
important item – muhim bandi, joyi – важный пункт  
impose – majburiyat qo‘ymoq – обязать  
impression – taassurot – впечатление  
in accordance with – asosan, bo‘yicha – в зависимости от; согласно  
include – o‘z ichiga olmoq – включать  
increase – o‘shish – возрастание  
indoor – uy ichidagi, ichki – домашний; комнатный  
inexpensive – arzon, qimmat emas – дешевый; недорогой  
inform the readers on – o‘quvchilarga xabar bermoq – передать читателям  
inn – kichik, mehmonxona – жилье; гостиница  
innkeeper – mehmonxona egasi – хозяин гостиницы  
inns – yashash joyi, uy – жилье; дом  
interior – (nimaningdir) ichni qismi – внутренняя часть (чего-л.)  
international association – xalqaro assotsiatsiya – международная ассоциация  
international foreign trade firms – xalqaro chet el firmalari – международные торговые иностранные фирмы  
international law – xalqaro huquq – международное право  
internationally – xalqaro andazada – на международном уровне  
interpreter – (og‘zaki) tarjimon – переводчик (устный)

## J

joint ventures – qo‘shma korxonalar – совместные предприятия  
journey – sayohat – путешествие  
junior – kichik (mansabli odamlar uchun) – младший (для невысоких людей)

## K

keen promoter – zo‘r himoyachi – ярый защитник  
kitchen – oshxona – кухня  
kitchenettes – kichkina oshxona – небольшая кухня.

## L

Land of Rising Sun – kun chiqar mamlakat – страна восходящего солнца  
landscape – manzara – пейзаж



large volumes of cotton fibre – yuqori navli paxta tolasi – хлопковые волокна высшего сорта  
 lasting peace – doimiy tinchlik – прочный мир  
 laundered – yuvilgan – стиранный  
 law of gravitation – tortish qonuni – закон притяжения  
 leader – yo‘l ko‘rsatuvchi, yo‘l boshchi – проводник; гид  
 leading partners – asosiy, bosh sheriklar – ведущие партнёры  
 legal framework – qonuniy talab ichida – в законном требовании  
 legal issues – qonuniy ishlar – законные дела  
 length – uzunlik – длина  
 liner – layner (yo‘lovchi tashidigan katta kema) – лайнер (рейсовое судно)  
 lobby – vestibul; qabulxona, foye – вестибюль; приемная; фойе  
 locally – aniq bir joyda – в определенном месте  
 locate – joyini aniqlamoq – определять место  
 lock – qulf – замок  
 lodge – mehmonxona – гостиница  
 lodging – turarjoy, uy-joy – жилище, жилье  
 lot – qur‘a – лот, жребий  
 luggage – yuk – багаж  
 luxurious – serhasham, hashamatli, dabdabali – богатый; пышный; роскошный  
 luxury of palaces – saroylar hashamati – роскошь дворцов

## M

maid – qiz bola – девушка  
 main goal – asosiy maqsad – основная цель  
 majestic – hashamatli, dabdabali – величественный, грандиозный, величавый  
 make conditions worse – ahvolni yomonlashtirmoq – ухудшать положение  
 manufactures – ishlab chiqarish – производства  
 marble – marmartosh (material sifatida) – мрамор (как материал)  
 means of communication – aloqa vositalari – средства коммуникации  
 medium – vosita – средство  
 microphone – mikrofon – микрофон  
 cordless – simsiz – беспроводный  
 minibar – kichik bar – минибар  
 Ministry of Higher Education – Oliy ta‘lim vazirligi – Министерство высшего образования  
 mirror – ko‘zgu – зеркало  
 mission – tashrif – миссия  
 modern – zamonaviy – современный  
 modesty – kamtarlik – скромность  
 motel – motel (mehmonxona turi) – мотель

mountain – togʻ – гора  
mountaineering – alpinizm (baland togʻlarga, togʻ choʻqqilariga koʻtarilish sporti) – альпинизм  
multistore – koʻp qavatli – многоэтажный  
mutually fruitful and successful cooperation – oʻzaro foydali va muvoffaqiyatli hamkorlik – взаимовыгодное и успешное сотрудничество

## N

nearby – yaqinida joylashgan – близкий (ближний)  
nightlife – (shaharning) tungi hayoti – ночная жизнь (города)  
non ferrous metals – rangli metallar (цветные металлы)  
non – use of force – kuch ishlatmaslik – неупотребление силы  
nuclear and other weapons of mass destruction – yadroviy va boshqa omma-viy qirgʻin qurollari – ядерные и другие оружия массового уничтожения

## O

oasis – voha – оазис  
objective – vazifa, maqsad – задача, цель  
obligations – majburiyat – обязанность  
occasion – imkoniyat – возможность  
occupy – (xonaki) egallab olmoq; ijaraga olmoq – занимать (дом, квартиру); арендовать  
offer – taklif – предложение  
offer – taklif – предложение  
offer – taklif qilmoq; taklif kiritmoq – предлагать; делать предложение  
on a hot summer day – yozning issiq kunlaridan birida – один из жарких дней лета  
on acceding to – ishga kirishish – приступить к делу  
on foot – piyoda, uyuvov – пешком  
operate – ishlamoq, harakat qilmoq – работать; действовать  
operator – operator – оператор  
opportunity – imkoniyat – возможность; условие  
order – jamiy tabaqalari, ijtimoiy guruh – слой общества; социальная группа  
outdoor – binodan tashqarida – находящийся или совершающийся вне помещения  
outspoken – ochiq-oydin – откровенный  
overhead – yuqoridagi – верхний  
overnight – tun arafasida boʻladigan – происходивший накануне вечером  
owner – xoʻjayin, ega sohib – владелец; собственник; хозяин

## P

parking – avtomobillar to‘xtash joyi – место стоянки автомобилей  
passage – o‘tiladigan (transport o‘tadigan) joy, yo‘l – проезд, проход  
passenger – yo‘lovchi – пассажир  
pavilions – pavillionlar (ayvonlar) – павильон  
payment – to‘lov – плата  
period – vaqt, davr – период; промежуток времени  
perpendicularly – [pə: pən’dikjuləli] – перпендикулярно  
picturesque – chiroyli, go‘zal (manzara haqida) – живописный (о ландшафте)  
plague – [pleig] – vabo – чума  
platform – platforma – платформа  
pleasant – yoqimli – приятный  
pleasure – huzur – halovat – удовольствие  
plumbing – slesarluik ishi – слесарные работы  
pool – hovuz – пруд  
postgraduate courses – aspirantura – аспирантура  
power transformers – kuchli transformatorlar – силовые трансформаторы  
prefer – afzal ko‘rmoq – предпочитать  
presidential – prezidentlar uchun mo‘ljallangan – президентский  
pressure – bosim, ta’sir – влияние; нажим; давление  
prestigious – nufuzli – престижный  
prevent – oldini olmoq, oldindan ehtiyot chorasini ko‘rmoq – предотвращать;  
предупреждать  
price – narx – цена  
pride – iftixor – гордость  
private – xususi, shaxsiy – частный; собственный  
professional management program – kasbiy boshqarish dasturi – программа  
профессионального управления  
projector – proyektor – прожектор  
slide – sirpanish – скольжение  
prosperity – guллаб яшнаш (процветание)  
provide – ta’minlamoq – обеспечивать  
providing – tayyor, tayyorlangan, tayyor holatda – готовый; подготовленный;  
в состоянии готовности

## Q

quality – sifat – качество  
quickest – eng tez – наискорейший

## R

railway – temir yo‘l, temir yo‘li – железная дорога; железнодорожный путь  
rainbow – [reinbou] – yo‘y – радуга  
rates – mahalliy soliq – местный налог  
raw materials – xomashyo – сырьё  
real – haqiqiy, chin – действительный  
reception – qabul – прием  
reflecting – oynadek silliq – зеркальный  
refreshment – kuch to‘plash, dam olish – восстановление сил; отдых  
refrigerators – muzlatgichlar – холодильники  
register – (mehmonxonada) turuvchilarni yozadigan qayd daftar – книга записи постояльцев (в гостинице)  
regulation – nizom, qoida, tartibga solish – устав; урегулирование  
relate to – tegishli, aloqador bo‘lmoq – иметь отношение  
relax – mushaklarni bo‘shashtirmoq, dam olmoq – ослаблять; расслаблять  
remodelled – qayta ta‘mirlamoq – реконструировать  
rent – ijaraga olmoq – брать в аренду  
rent resemble – o‘xshamoq – походить  
repute – abro‘ (e‘tibor) – репутация  
require – muhtoj bo‘lmoq (nimagadir) – нуждаться (в чем-л.); buyurmoq,  
talab qilmoq – приказывать, требовать  
requisition – talab – требование  
research institutes – ilmiy-tekshirish institutlari – научно-исследовательские институты  
reserve – oldindan buyurtma bermoq – заказывать заранее  
residential – odamlar yashaqdigan (shahardagi tuman haqida) – жилой (о районе города)  
restaurant – restoran – ресторан  
rest – home – da‘volanuvchilar sanatoriyasi – санаторий для выздоравливающих  
retirement – istefoga chiqish – отставка  
return visit – javob tashrifi – ответный визит  
rhythm – ohang – ритм (в самом широком смысле – как периодичность; повторяемость)  
roof – tom, uy – крыша; кровля  
rucksack – ryukzak (yuk xalta) – рюкзак; походный мешок

## S

safe – xavfsiz – безопасный  
safety – xavfsizlik – безопасность  
salons – salon – салон

sample – namuna – образец; образчик  
sanatorium – davolanish maskani(sanatoriya), kurort – санаторий; курорт  
scene – sahna, manzara, ko‘rinish – пейзаж; картина; зрелище  
sideward’s – [saidwədz] – yon tomonda – в сторону, в бок  
seaside – dengiz (bo‘yidagi) kurort – побережье  
seasonal – mavsimiy – сезонный  
seat – o‘rindiq, joy – сиденье; место  
secure – mudofaa qilmoq – оборонять  
security – mudofaa – оборона  
senior – mansabdor – вышестоящий  
service – xizmat ko‘rsatish – обслуживание  
settling dispute – muammoni (kelishmovchiliklarini) hal qilish – решение спорных проблем  
ship – dengiz kemasi, kema – корабль; морское судно  
shore – (dengiz, ko‘l, okeanga oid ammo daryoga emas) qirg‘oq, sohil – берег (моря, озера, океана, но не реки); побережье  
sights – diqqatga sazovor joylar – достопримечательности  
sign – imzo qo‘ymoq – подписать  
silk – ipak – шелк  
simplicity – soddalik – простота  
slower – sekinroq, sustroq – медленнее; тише  
snacks – yengil ovqat – легкая закуска  
socially oriented market economy – jamiyatga yo‘naltirilgan bozor iqtisodiyoti – социально ориентированная рыночная экономика  
sofa bed – divan-karovat – диван-кровать  
solidarity – birdamlik – солидарность  
solving global problem of mankind – insoniyatning global (eng umumiy, muhim) muammolarini hal etish – решение глобальных проблем человечества  
sound – tovush; shovqin – звук; шум  
sovereign state – suveren (mustaqil) davlat – суверенное государство  
spas – mineral suvli kurortlar – курорт с минеральными водами  
specialize – ixtisoslashtirmoq – специализироваться  
speed – tezlik, sur‘at – скорость; темп  
stability – mustahkamlik – стабильность  
stage – taxtasupa, minbar – подмости, помост  
standard – qolip – стандарт  
station – stansiya – станция  
stewardess – styuardessa – стюардесса  
stipulate – ifodalamoq – обосновать  
stores – do‘kon, magazine – арсенал; цейхгауз  
straight – to‘g‘ri – прямой  
strengthen – mustahkamlamoq – укреплять

stucco – pardozlash – отделочный; штукатурный гипс  
studio – studiya – студия  
study of essential object – muhim fanlarni o‘rganmoq – изучать важные предметы  
subject (to) – itoatiga olmoq – взять в подчинение  
suitcase – (kichkina va yassi) chemodan – чемодан (небольшой и плоский)  
suite – majmua, to‘plam – комплект; набор  
sumptuous royal receptions – yuqori darajadagi qirol qabuli – приём короля на высшем уровне  
sunbathe – oftobda qoraymoq – загорать  
sunset – quyoshbibg botishi – заход солнца  
superbly – dabdaba bilan, hasham bilan – роскошно; великолепно  
superior – yuqori turadigan – находящийся выше  
supplier – ta‘minlovchi – обеспечивающий  
surroundings – tevarak – atrofdagi joylar – окрестности  
swimming – suzish – плавание

## Т

thanks to – suyanmoq (бирор кишига, фикрга) – полагаться на; благодаря  
the Royal Navy – qirollik floti – королевский флот  
threat of invasion – bosib olish xavfi – угроза завоевания  
throne – taxt – трон  
throughout – orqali – через  
ticket – bilet, chipta – билет  
to approach – yaqinlashmoq – приблизиться  
to be born – tug‘ilmoq – родиться  
to be headedly – boshqarilmoq – управляться  
to be in force – o‘z kuchida qolmoq – быть в силах  
to crown – taxtga o‘tirmoq, toj kiygizmoq – короновать  
to draw attention – [drɔ: ætenʃn] – o‘ziga jalb qilmoq – привлекать внимание  
to his surprise – o‘zi hayron bo‘lmoq – к своему удивлению  
to make one’s broadcast – radio orqali gapirish – выступать в радиопередаче  
to put on the glasses – ko‘zoynak taqib olmoq – надеть очки  
top – tepasi – верхушка  
tour – sayohat, safar, ekskursiya – путешествие; поездка; экскурсия  
tourist – sayyoh, sayohatchi – путешественник; турист  
townhouse – shahrdagi uy – городской дом  
trade relations – savdo aloqalari – торговые отношения  
train – poyezd – поезд  
tranquil – tinch, osoyishta – спокойный; уравновешенный  
transport facilities – transport vositalari – транспортные средства

transportation base – transportlar bazasi – транспортная база  
travel – sayohat – путешествие  
travelers – sayohatchilar – путешественники  
treaties – shartnomalar – контракты  
trip – sayhat; sayr, ekskursiya – путешествие; поездка; экскурсия  
triumphal victory – tantanali g'alaba – триумфальная победа  
tropical – tropik – тропический

## U

ultimate – eng uzoq – самый отдаленный  
unbeatable – yengilmas – непобедимый  
undetected – qo'l yetmaydigan, ochilmagan – необнаруженный; неоткрытый  
unique – tengsiz – единственный  
unique written testimony – nodir yozma ko'rsatma – уникальное письменное доказательство  
unknown – notanish – неизвестный  
upgrade – malaka oshirmoq – повышать квалификацию  
upside down – oyog'i osmonda – вверх тармашками  
upwards – yuqori – вверх  
useful – foydali, kerakli – полезный; пригодный  
valet – xizmatkor – слуга

## W

waiting room – kutish zali (vokzalda) – зал ожидания (на вокзале)  
wealth – boylik – богатство  
weigh – (tarozida) tortmoq – взвешивать  
welfare – благосостояние  
wherever – qayerda bo'lmasin – где бы ни; куда бы ни  
wide – keng – широкий  
wish – tilak, istak – желание  
wonderful – ajoyib, hayratlantiruvchi – замечательный; удивительный

O. MO‘MINOV, X. ABDURAHMONOVA,  
S. TOHIRJONOVA, Sh. BO‘TAYEV

## ENGLISH

### 2

**Akademik litsey va kasb-hunar kollejlarning  
2-bosqich o‘quvchilari uchun o‘quv qo‘llanma**

Muharrir *G‘ Rahmonov*  
Musavvir *A. Papov*  
Badiiy muharrir *A. Bobrov*  
Texnik muharrir *T. Smirnova*  
Sahifalovchi *A. Jumaniyozov*

IB № 4499

Bosishga 15.08.2007 da ruxsat etildi. Bichimi  $60 \times 90^{1/16}$ . Tayms garniturası.  
Ofset bosma usulida bosildi. Shartli b. t.18,0 . Nashr. t. 19,5. Adadi 4200 nusxa.  
Shartnoma №. 33-2007. raqamli buyurtma. Bahosi shartnoma asosida.

O‘zbekiston Matbuot va axborot agentligining  
G‘afur G‘ulom nomidagi nashriyot-matbaa ijodiy iyi.  
100129, Toshkent, Navoiy ko‘chasi, 30  
100128. Toshkent, Usmon Yusupov ko‘chasi, 86.

**Bizning internet manzilimiz [www.iptd gulom.uz](http://www.iptd gulom.uz)**